

VISIT...

LANZAROTE
Caliente.COM

Spanish Course Handbook

**Instructions
Explanatory Notes
Vocabularies**

The Linguaphone Institute

Linguaphone Institute Limited
207 Regent Street
London W1R 8AU

© 1973 Linguaphone Institute Limited, London

All rights reserved. No part of this publication, or related recorded material, may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior permission of Linguaphone Institute Limited.

First published 1973
Second (revised) edition 1974
Third (revised) edition 1976
Fourth (revised) edition 1979
Fifth (revised) edition 1980

Printed in Great Britain by
Lowe and Brydone Printers Limited
Thetford, Norfolk

Course validated by: Profesor Dr. Antonio Quilis, Catedrático de Lengua Española de la Universidad de Valladolid, Director del Departamento de Fonética del Consejo Superior de Investigaciones Científicas de Madrid.

Written by: Caya Marta Gutiérrez, Lcda. en Filosofía y Letras, Universidad de Madrid, Profesora del Instituto de España (Londres).

Recorded by:	Antonio Quilis	Palmira Gallallurralde
	Carmen Bienes Boezo	Vicente Molina
	Jacinta Castillejo	María Móntez
	Carlos Durán Rodríguez	Miguel Payo
	Amparo de Fábregas	Miguel Peñaranda
	Juan Fábregas	Rafael Ruiz de la Cuesta
	Eloísa Fernández	Pablo Soto

Under the supervision of: Profesor Dr. Antonio Quilis

Illustrations by: A. Balbuena Hernández, M. Núñez Navarro

This handbook by: John C. Pride, B.A. (Wales)

**The
Linguaphone
Academic
Advisory
Committee:**

The Rt. Hon. Lord Evans, D.Lit., LL.D.,
Hon. Dr. of Letters, University of Paris,
formerly Provost, University College London.

Professor A. C. Gimson, B.A.,
Professor of Phonetics,
University College London.

Monsieur André Martinet,
Professeur à l'Université de Paris (Sorbonne),
Directeur de l'Institut de Linguistique.

Professor Randolph Quirk, CBE, MA, PhD, DLit,
FBA Hon Fil Dr (Universities of Lund and
Uppsala) Hon Dr of Letters (University of Paris)
Quain Professor of English, University College
London.

**Professor Albert Sonnenfeld, Ph.D., Chev., Ordre
des Palmes Académiques,**
Professor of French and Comparative Literatures,
Chairman, Department of Romance Languages
and Literatures, Princeton University.

Keith Rawson-Jones, B.A.,
Director, Educational Research and Development,
The Linguaphone Institute.
(Secretary)

Contents

Learning with Linguaphone	vii
Introduction	1
Explanatory Notes	3
Translation of Sounds section	213
Appendix	215
Vocabulary, Spanish/English	257
Vocabulary, English/Spanish	285

Learning with Linguaphone

The Linguaphone Spanish Course

Your Linguaphone Course has been carefully constructed in the most up-to-date scientific way to build up the language you are learning from an absolute beginning to the point where, if you have followed the instructions, you will be able to speak, read, and write the language and to understand it when it is spoken. You will be able to cope confidently with everyday situations in the country where the language is spoken.

The Books and the Recordings

The Illustrated Book (Curso de español)

The Introduction introduces you to some elementary sentence patterns and to the sounds of the language.

Each of the thirty lessons has three separate parts so that, once you have understood the Introduction, you have ninety carefully graded, easily paced stages to work through. Each stage is long enough to give you meaningful language practice and short enough for you to understand everything in it in a single study period.

Part 1 is a monologue which brings in the main teaching points of the lesson. This means that you have only one voice to listen to while you absorb the new language.

In *Part 2* you will hear the characters of the story using the new language in everyday situations.

In *Parts 1* and *2* you will meet a family and their friends in everyday life.

Part 3 consists of conversations set in different situations. This part is based on the language you have learned in *Parts 1* and *2* and gives you the chance to practise it in varied situations.

The illustrations to the lessons are there to show you at a glance what is happening in the story and to enable you to see without delay the meaning of individual words and phrases.

The Recordings

The Introduction and all the lessons are recorded. The professional speakers have been carefully selected for their correctness and clarity of speech. The early lessons have been recorded as slowly as possible without distorting the language. Gradually, the speed of speech is increased through the course. There is a separate section on the sounds of the language designed to enable you to recognise and practise the key sounds. Refer to this section regularly throughout the course. Remember that different languages often pronounce the same letters or combination of letters in quite different ways. Practice makes perfect.

This Handbook

After this section you will find:

- 1 A translation of the Introduction.
- 2 A guide to each lesson which gives you:
 - i) A short account of what happens in the lesson.
 - ii) A list of the new words used in the lesson. This is arranged in groups of words which have a similar grammatical function. By seeing them grouped this way you will learn them more quickly. For easy reference, each group is given in alphabetical order.
 - iii) Notes on the meaning of the lesson, with the language points carefully explained; these notes progressively build up to give an understanding of the whole language.
- 3 Translation of the Sounds section.
- 4 Appendices which list useful categories of language, such as irregular verbs, which you will have met in the course.
- 5 Two alphabetical vocabularies which give you the meaning of each word as it is used in the course. In the Spanish-English vocabulary the numbers in front of the English meaning(s) for each Spanish word or phrase refer to the lesson in which it first occurs with that meaning. The English-Spanish vocabulary gives you an alphabetical list of the English words and phrases contained in the Spanish-English vocabulary with their meanings in Spanish.

The Exercise Book (Ejercicios escritos)

This book enables you to practise writing the language you have learned.

Instructions

Regular study and practice with this course is much more efficient than attempting large amounts at irregular intervals. 'A little and often' is preferable to 'a lot but seldom'. For the Introduction and each lesson:

- 1 **Recording** Listen to the recording of Part 1 once. Don't try to understand at this stage. Just listen to the sounds of the language.
- 2 **Handbook** Read the section 'what happens'. This will give you an idea of what happens in Part 1. (For the Introduction only, you have a complete translation.)
- 3 **Recording** Listen to the recording of Part 1 several times more. You will now begin to associate the sounds with what happens. You will find that you are becoming accustomed to the sounds of the language.
- 4 **Recording Illustrated book** (*Curso de español*) Listen to the recording of Part 1 and follow the text in the book several times. You will now be able to relate what you hear to what you see printed. At the same time, the pictures will help you to understand a little more.
- 5 **Handbook** Work out the meaning. Use the word list and notes. (For the Introduction only, you have a complete translation.) Try to understand first of all the meaning of the phrases, and then of whole sentences.
- 6 **Recording** Listen to the recording again now that you understand the meaning. Continue to listen until you can understand everything as you hear it.
- 7 **Recording Illustrated book** (*Curso de español*) Read the text to yourself and then read it aloud several times. If you have any doubts about the pronunciation of any word or phrase listen to that part of the recording again. You can also listen to the recording of the sounds of Spanish (*Los sonidos españoles*).
- 8 Now repeat instructions 1-7 for Part 2 and then for Part 3.

- 9 **Written exercises (*Ejercicios escritos*)** Do the exercise “¿Comprendes la lección?” (Do you understand the lesson?) to see if you have fully understood the lesson.
- Read the four sentences a, b, c and d.
 - Write down the letter which is alongside the one correct sentence. The other sentences are wrong. Do the whole exercise like this. Then:
 - Check with the answers at the end of the book.
- NB Write your answers on a separate sheet of paper, not in the book.
- 10 If you have made no more than one mistake in the exercise, go on to instruction 11. If you have made more than one mistake, go back to instruction 4 and work through the lesson again.
- 11 **Written exercises (*Ejercicios escritos*)** Do the written exercises on a separate sheet of paper, not in the book.
- Read the examples: they show you what you have to do.
 - Write out each sentence in full, including the first two or three, which are the same as the examples.
 - Check your sentences with the answers at the end of the book.
 - If you have made a mistake and cannot understand why, refer to the text again and check with the appendix.
 - If you have made more than two mistakes in one exercise, do the exercise again, but study the lesson first.
- 12 Begin the next lesson.

Introduction

Part one

What's this? It's a match.

What's this? It's a watch.

What's this? It's a stamp.

What's this? It's a beer.

What's this? It's a dog.

What's this? It's a key.

What's this? It's a lift.

What's this? It's a pack of cards.

Part two

Have you got a cigarette? Yes, I've got a cigarette.

Have you got a daughter? Yes, I've got a daughter.

Have you got a watch? Yes, I've got a watch.

Have you got a guitar? Yes, I've got a guitar.

Have you got a stamp? Yes, I've got a stamp.

Have you got a spoon? Yes, I've got a spoon.

Have you got a ticket? Yes, I've got a ticket.

Have you got a magazine? Yes, I've got a magazine.

N.B. Vd. is a conventional abbreviation for usted: you.

Are there any oranges? Yes, there are oranges.

Are there any cars? Yes, there are cars.

Are there any matches? Yes, there are matches.

Are there any showers? Yes, there are showers.

Are there any flowers? Yes, there are flowers.

Are there any grapes? Yes, there are grapes.

Are there any waiters? Yes, there are waiters.

Are there any apples? Yes, there are apples.

Part three

Don Ramón

Good morning.
I'm Ramón Muñoz Alba.
I'm a Spanish doctor.
I live and work in Chile.
I'm married.
I'll introduce you to my wife.

Doña Julia

I'm his wife.
My name is Julia Romero de Muñoz.
I'm from Zaragoza.
Ramón and I have two children: a son and a daughter.

Luis

I'm Luis, the elder child.
I'm twenty-one.
I'm a student.
I live in Madrid.
I like skiing and mountaineering.

Marisol

Hello!
I'm Marisol.
I'm sixteen.
I want to be an actress.
I don't like studying at all.
I'm on holiday in Spain.
Ah, here's my grandmother.
Cheerio.

Doña Cristina

Good morning.
I'm Ramón's mother.
My name is Cristina Alba de Muñoz.
I'm a widow.
I live with my son and his family.
I'm seventy-two.

Lección una Lesson one

La llegada The arrival

1

What happens

Part one

Don Ramón Muñoz Alba is a Spanish doctor working in Chile. He and his wife doña Julia, daughter Marisol and mother doña Cristina are on board an aircraft just about to land at Madrid airport at the start of a long holiday in Spain. They will be met by his son, Luis, who is a student in Madrid.

Part two

En el control de pasaportes At passport control

Don Ramón presents their passports to the policeman on duty. Everything is in order.

En la aduana At the customs

The family present their luggage for customs clearance. They have nothing to declare.

Encuentro con Luis Meeting Luis

Luis meets his family after they have cleared customs. They exchange greetings and go off to get a taxi.

En el taxi In the taxi

The taxi driver puts their luggage in the boot and drives them to the Hotel Cibeles.

Part three

El señor Álvarez y el señor García Mr. Álvarez and Mr. García

Sr. Álvarez, an official at Las Palmas airport, asks Sr. García who is travelling from South America to Spain some personal questions.

En la aduana At the customs

Sr. Martínez explains to a customs officer what he has in his cases.

Enrique y Carmen Enrique and Carmen

Enrique and Carmen meet at the airport in Santiago de Chile and discover they are both Spanish.

En taxi a Barajas By taxi to Barajas

Elena and her friends are going to Barajas airport to meet Elena's father who is coming from Barcelona to stay for a month.

Words in this lesson

a + el = al to the
el the (masc.)
la the (fem.)
un a (masc.)
una a (fem.)

el aeropuerto airport
el amigo friend
el año year
el avión plane
el bolso de mano bag
el control control
el chico boy
el encuentro meeting
el equipaje baggage, luggage
el español Spaniard
el estudiante student
el francés French
el guardia policeman, customs officer
el hijo son
el hospital hospital
el hotel hotel
el maletero boot
el médico doctor
el mes month
el padre father
el pasaporte passport
el policía policeman
el regalo present, gift
el señor Mr., sir
el taxi taxi
el taxímetro taximeter
el taxista taxi driver
el tiempo time

la abuela grandmother
la actriz actress
la aduana customs
la española Spaniard
la familia family
la hija daughter
la lección lesson
la llegada arrival

la madre mother
la maleta suitcase
la mamá mum
la mujer wife
la parte part
la peseta peseta
la profesora teacher
la propina tip
la regla order (in order)
la ropa clothes
la señorita Miss, young lady
la universidad university

bueno good
correcto correct, right
español Spanish
grande big
mi my
muchos many
pequeño little, small
primero first
segundo second
su your
tercero third

declarar to declare
espera (esperar) he is waiting (to wait)
estar to be
estoy I am
estás you are
está he/she/it is, you are
estamos we are
están they are
(ir) (to go)
voy I'm going
va he's going, you're going
vamos we're going, let's go
van you're going, they are going
(llegar) (to arrive)
llega he's arriving
llegamos we're arriving

poner to put
quiere (querer) she wants (to want)
ser to be
soy I am
es he/she/it is, you are
(tener) (to have)
tengo I have
tiene he/she/it has, you have
tenemos we have
tienen you have
tomar to take
trabajo (trabajar) I work (to work)
ver to see
(vivir) (to live)
vivo I live
vive he lives, you live

algo something, anything
todo all, everything
usted/es you
yo I

a to, at, in
al lado de beside, next to
con with
de of, from
detrás de behind
en in, at
para for

pero but
y and

ahora now
aquí here
bien well
de vacaciones on holiday
más more
muy very

Notes

Part one

- I Me llamo Ramón Muñoz Alba. *My name is Ramón Muñoz Alba.*
- a Me llamo This literally means *I call myself*. It is the usual way of giving one's name in Spanish. Listen carefully to the pronunciation of ll (also in the title of this lesson, *la llegada*); ll is a separate letter of the Spanish alphabet, coming after l.

naturalmente naturally, of course
no no, not
por fin at last
sí yes
siempre always, ever
sólo only
también also, too

como as
¿cómo? how?
¿cuántas? how many?
¿cuánto? how much?
¿dónde? where?
¿qué? what?

adiós goodbye
claro que no of course not
de nada that's all right
digan where to?
gracias thank you
hola hello
me llamo... my name is...
por favor please
¿qué tal? how are you?
se llama... her name is...

un/uno one
dos two
tres three
cuatro four
cinco five
dieciséis sixteen
veinte twenty
veintiuno twenty-one
veinticinco twenty-five
cuarenta y cuatro forty-four
cincuenta fifty
setenta y dos seventy-two

- b Ramón Muñoz Alba** All Spaniards have two surnames — those of both parents. **Muñoz** is **Ramón's** father's name and **Alba** his mother's. **Don** is placed before his christian name as a courtesy title. See Appendix 22. Just as **ll** is a separate letter, so too is **ñ**, which follows **n** in the alphabet. Listen carefully to the pronunciation of **ñ**. The accent (') in **Ramón** is the only written accent in Spanish. Watch out for words in which an accent appears. See Appendix 18.
- 2 Soy español pero vivo en Chile.** *I'm Spanish but I live in Chile.*
- a** **Soy** means *am* or *I am*. Spaniards usually omit the word for *I* unless they want to emphasize it for some reason.
- b español** Notice that **español** (*Spanish*) is written with a small initial letter. This is the case with all adjectives of nationality in Spanish.
- c pero vivo en Chile** **Vivo** means *I live*. Again the word for *I* is left out. Notice the pronunciation of **ch** in **Chile**. **Ch** is always pronounced this way.
- 3 Soy médico.** *I'm a doctor.*
- The Spanish word for *a* or *an* is left out when speaking about a person's occupation.
- 4 Trabajo en un hospital de Santiago.** *I work in a Santiago hospital.*
- a Trabajo: I work** Again the word for *I* is omitted (N2a, 2c and 3). Listen carefully to the pronunciation of **j**.
- b un hospital de Santiago: a hospital of Santiago** Notice that **h** remains silent in Spanish.
- 5 Tengo cincuenta años.** *I'm fifty years old* (literally: *I have fifty years*). This is the usual way of expressing age in Spanish.
- a Tengo: I have**
- b cincuenta años** Note the lisped pronunciation of **c**. This is always the case when **c** is followed by **e** or **i**. Otherwise it has the *k* sound as in **médico**. **Años** is the plural form of **año: year**. Spanish nouns ending in a vowel add **s** to form the plural.
- 6 Ahora yo voy a España con mi familia.** *Now I'm going to Spain with my family.*
- yo voy: I'm going** Here **don Ramón** uses the actual word meaning *I: yo*. He is giving a little emphasis to the fact that he himself is going to Spain now.
- 7 Vamos de vacaciones.** *We're going on holiday* (literally: *of holidays*). **Vamos: We're going** The word for *we* is usually left out in Spanish in the same way as **yo: I** is omitted (N2a).
- 8 Vamos en avión.** *We're going by air* (literally: *in plane*).
- 9 Yo estoy al lado de Julia, mi mujer.** *I'm next to Julia, my wife.*
- a Yo estoy: I am** You have already met **soy** meaning *I am* with **soy español** and **soy médico**. **Soy** indicates who or what a person or thing is, **estoy** is used to say where a person is, i.e. to express position. See Appendix 11.

- b al lado de: at the side of**
- 10 Es española también.** *She's Spanish too.*
- a Es: she is** No word for *she* is used. (N2a and 7).
- b española** As **Julia** is feminine the ending **a** is placed on **español**.
- 11 Tiene cuarenta y cuatro años.** *She's forty-four.*
- Tiene: She has** (N5)
- 12 Es profesora de francés.** *She's a French teacher* (literally: *teacher of French*).
- a Profesora** is the feminine form of **profesor: teacher**, used because we are talking here about **Julia** (N10b). Remember no word for *a* or *an* is used with occupations (N3).
- b francés** Here this means the French language although it can also be used to mean French in general or a Frenchman; **español** likewise can mean the Spanish language. Remember these words of nationality are written with a small letter (N2b).
- 13 Detrás de Julia está Marisol, mi hija.** *Behind Julia is Marisol, my daughter.*
- Está** is used for *is* here and not **es** as we are referring to position (N9a).
- 14 Tiene dieciséis años.** *She's sixteen.*
- 15 Quiere ser actriz.** *She wants to be an actress.*
- a Quiere: She wants** The letter **u** following **q** is never pronounced.
- b ser: to be** This is called the infinitive form of the verb. **Soy** and **es** are both forms of the verb **ser**.
- c** Note the lisped pronunciation of the Spanish **z** in **actriz**.
- 16 Al lado de Marisol está mi madre.** *Next to Marisol is my mother.*
- 17 Se llama doña Cristina y tiene setenta y dos años.** *Her name is doña Cristina and she's seventy-two.*
- a Se llama: she is called** (N1a).
- b Doña** is the feminine form of the courtesy title (N1b).
- 18 Mi hijo, Luis, espera en el aeropuerto.** *My son, Luis, is waiting at (in) the airport.*
- espera: is waiting** or *waits*.
- 19 Luis vive en Madrid.** *Luis lives in Madrid.*
- 20 Es estudiante en la universidad.** *He's a student at the university.*
- a estudiante: student** Again we are referring to someone's occupation so there is no word for *a*.
- b** We have now had two words (**el** and **la**) in Spanish for *the* (i.e. definite article). **El** is used with nouns that are classed as masculine e.g. **el aeropuerto**, and **la** with those classed as feminine e.g. **la universidad**. In the vocabularies in this book all the nouns are listed with **el** or **la**. Most nouns ending in **o** are masculine (**el aeropuerto**, **el médico**) and most ending in **a** are feminine (**la familia**, **la hija**).

- 21 Tiene veintiún años. *He's twenty-one.*
 a Tiene: *he has* You will have noticed that **tiene** means both *he has* and *she has*. If there had been any doubt whom Ramón was talking about he would have had to put in a word for *he* or *she* as the case might be.
 b Veintiún is a shortened form of **veintiuno** and must be used if followed by a noun.
- 22 ¡Ah, por fin llegamos a Madrid! *Ah, at last we're arriving in (at) Madrid!*
 a ¡...! Notice that in Spanish one places an upside down exclamation mark at the beginning of a sentence as well as one "the right way up" at the end.
 b llegamos a: *we're arriving in* In Spanish you use **a** to translate *at* or *in* referring to arriving, and **en** to translate *at* or *in* when you are already at the place in question e.g. **Llegamos a Madrid; Luis está en el aeropuerto** (N18).

Part two

En el control de pasaportes *At passport control*

- 23 **Policía** *Policeman*
 Although this noun ends in **a** it is a masculine noun and so *the policeman* is **el policía**.
- 24 **Pasaporte, por favor, señor.** *Passport please, sir.*
Señor is the Spanish equivalent of *sir* or *Mr.* but is used much more frequently than *sir* is in English.
- 25 **Aquí tiene: cuatro pasaportes.** *Here you are: four passports.*
Aquí tiene, literally *here you have*, is always used where we would say *here you are*.
- 26 ¿Cuánto tiempo van a estar en España? *How long are you going to be in Spain?*
 a ¿Cuánto tiempo...?: *How much time...?* Notice the upside down question mark at the beginning of the sentence. (N22a).
 b van a estar: *are you going to be* **Van** means *you are going* when you are talking to two or more people. There are several ways of expressing *you* in Spanish and this is one of them. If another verb, here **estar**, follows **van** you must place **a** between them.
 c **Estar** is used here and not **ser** as we are referring to place once again. (N9a, 13). Just like **ser**, **estar** is an infinitive and **estoy** and **está** are both forms of the verb **estar** (N15b).
- 27 **Tres meses.** *Three months.*
Meses is the plural of **mes**. Spanish words ending in a consonant add **es** to form the plural (compare with N5b).

- 28 **Bien, todo está en regla. Gracias.** *Good, everything is in order. Thank you.*
Estar is used for *to be* not only when referring to position or place (N9a), but also when referring to things of a temporary or impermanent nature.
- 29 **De nada. Adiós.** *That's all right. Goodbye.*
De nada is the customary response to **gracias**.

En la aduana *At the customs*

- 30 **Guardia** *Policeman*
- 31 ¿Cuántas maletas tienen ustedes, señor? *How many cases have you got, sir?*
 a ¿Cuántas maletas...?: *How many cases...?* **Maleta** is a feminine noun and is used here in the plural. Because of this the adjective **cuánto** (N26a) changes to the feminine plural form **cuántas**. In Spanish adjectives must agree with the nouns they describe according to gender (masculine or feminine) and number (singular or plural).
 b tienen ustedes: *have you (got)* **Ustedes** is the word for *you* when you are talking to two or more people.
- 32 **Vamos a ver:** *Let's see:*
Vamos followed by **a** and the infinitive of another verb, here, **ver**: *to see* means *let's*. On its own it can mean *let's go* as well as *we are going* (N7 and 8).
- 33 **una maleta grande, dos pequeñas y tres bolsos de mano.** *A large case two small ones and three bags (of hand).*
 a **una maleta grande** Notice that **grande**: *large*, is placed after the noun it describes. Most adjectives in Spanish follow the nouns they describe. **Una** is the feminine word for *a/an* (i.e. the indefinite article). The masculine word is **un** e.g. **un hospital, un pasaporte** (N4b and 20b).
 b **dos pequeñas**: *two small (ones)* Spanish does not use a word for *one* in such expressions. **Pequeñas** is the feminine, plural form of **pequeño** as we are describing **maletas**.
- 34 ¿Tienen ustedes algo que declarar? *Have you got anything to declare?*
algo que declarar: *anything/something to declare* **Algo que** is a useful phrase to remember. **Declarar** is an infinitive like **estar** and **ser**.
- 35 ¡Claro que no! *Of course not!*
- 36 **No, sólo tenemos ropa y regalos.** *No, we only have clothes and presents.*
 a sólo tenemos: *we only have* We have now had **tengo**: *I have*; **tiene**: *he/she has, you have*; **tenemos**: *we have*; **tienen**: *you have (plural)*. See Appendix 4a.
 b **ropa**: *clothes* In Spanish this is a singular word.

Encuentro con Luis Meeting Luis

- 37 ¡Hola, mamá! ¿Cómo estás? Hello, mum! How are you?
Estás, another form of *estar*, is used when talking to one person who is a relative or close friend. *Estar* is used when referring to somebody's state of health. See Appendix 11b).
- 38 Estoy muy bien, hijo. I'm very well, son.
Notice that *hijo* means *son* and *hija* daughter.
- 39 ¿Qué tal, chico? How are you, boy?
¿Qué tal? is a more colloquial and informal way of asking someone how he is than ¿Cómo estás?
- 40 Como siempre, padre. (The same) as ever, father.
- 41 ¿Dónde están abuela y Marisol? Where are grandmother and Marisol?
a ¿Dónde? You may have already noticed that question words like ¿dónde?, ¿cómo?, ¿qué?, ¿cuánto?, ¿cuántas? all have a written accent. There is no accent when these words are not used as questions (N40). See Appendix 18b.
- b Están is another form of *estar* (N37).
- c abuela: grandmother This is the feminine form of *abuelo*: grandfather. *Abuelos* means grandparents.
- 42 Aquí estamos, Luisito. Here we are, Luisito.
a Estamos is another form of *estar*. We have now met *estoy*: I am; *estás*: you are; *está*: he/she/it is; *estamos*: we are; *están*: you are (plural). See Appendix 4a.
- b Luisito is an affectionate form of *Luis*. In English we tend to shorten names whereas Spaniards are inclined to lengthen them by adding an ending.
- 43 Bueno, bueno, vamos a tomar un taxi. Right then, let's take a taxi.
a Bueno literally means *good* but in this type of situation *bueno, bueno* is being used to try to put a stop to the conversation and to urge everybody to get a move on.
- b Remember *vamos a + Infinitive = let's* (N32).

En el taxi In the taxi

- 44 Taxista Taxi driver
Although it ends in *a*, *taxista*, like *policía* is a masculine noun.
- 45 Digan, señores. Where to, ladies and gentlemen?
a Digan, literally *say*, is a stock expression used by people who render a service, such as taxi drivers, waiters etc. and has to be translated according to the particular situation. If the taxi driver were talking to one person he would say *diga*.
- b Señores, the plural of *señor*, can mean *gentlemen* or *ladies and gentlemen* (N24).

- 46 Hotel Cibeles. Cibeles Hotel.
This fictitious hotel is named after one of Madrid's most famous squares.
- 47 Muy bien, amigo. Very well, friend.
Madrid taxi drivers can be quite familiar with their customers.
- 48 Voy a poner el equipaje en el maletero. I'm going to put the luggage in the boot.
Voy a poner: I'm going to put Notice the same use of *a* as in *vamos a* (N26b, 32, 43b).
- 49 ¿El taxímetro es correcto, naturalmente? The meter is correct, of course?
- 50 y veinticinco más de propina. and twenty-five more as a tip.
a Don Ramón is referring to twenty-five pesetas, the *peseta* being the Spanish monetary unit.
- b de propina: as a tip
- 51 Muchas gracias. Thank you very much (literally: many thanks).

Part three

El señor Álvarez y el señor García Mr. Alvarez and Mr. Garcia

- 52 El señor Álvarez. When *señor* is used with a surname, *el* is placed before it if you are referring to the person but not if you are speaking directly to him e.g. ¿Qué tal, señor García?: How are you, Mr. Garcia? In plays and dialogues like these *el* is left out when you are merely indicating who is speaking. *Señor* abbreviates in writing to *Sr*.
- 53 ¿Cómo se llama usted? What's your name? (literally: How do you call yourself?). See N1a and 17a.
- 54 ¿Tiene usted pasaporte? Have you got a passport?
a Usted is the word for *you* when you are talking to one person who is not a close friend or relative (N26b, 31b, 37). With *usted* the correct form of the verb to have is *tiene* and with *ustedes*, *tienen* (N31b). See Appendix 4a, 14a.
- b Un is omitted before *pasaporte* in this question.
- 55 Sí: tengo un pasaporte español. Yes, I have a Spanish passport.
Adjectives of nationality like *español* and *francés* follow the noun (N33a).
- 56 Pero, ¿vive usted en España? But, do you live in Spain?
Vive can mean *you live* or *he lives* (N19). See how easy it is to ask a simple question in Spanish by placing the subject after the verb.
Usted vive en España: You live in Spain.
¿Vive usted en España?: Do you live in Spain?
- 57 No, no vivo en España. No, I don't live in Spain.
To make a statement negative you simply put *no* before the verb e.g.: No vivo en España: I don't live in Spain; Yo no voy a Madrid: I'm not going to Madrid.

58 ¿Va usted a España ahora? Are you going to Spain now?

En la aduana At the customs

59 ¿Qué tiene usted...? What have you got...?

60 para mi familia... for my family...

Enrique y Carmen Enrique and Carmen

61 Hola, señorita. ¿Cómo está usted? Hello, miss. How are you?

a señorita: miss This is also used to mean young lady.

b As Enrique does not know Carmen he addresses her as **usted** and does not use the familiar form as Luis did to his mother (N37). **Está**, not **estás**, is the correct form of the verb to use with **usted**.

62 Soy de Barcelona. I'm from Barcelona.

Ser de: to be from is used to express origin.

En taxi a Barajas By taxi to Barajas

63 Barajas is the name of Madrid's international airport.

64 ¿...al aeropuerto? ...to the airport?

Al is formed by a: to and el: the.

65 Mi padre llega en avión. My father is arriving by plane.

En is used to indicate how one travels e.g. **en avión**: by plane; **en taxi**: by taxi.

66 ¿Dónde vive su padre? Where does your father live?

Su is used for your when referring to people you address as **usted** and **ustedes**.

67 un mes. a/one month.

Un and una mean one as well as a/an.

Lección dos Lesson two

El hotel The hotel

What happens

Part one

Don Ramón describes the excellent hotel the family will be staying at in Madrid. They will be there for a few days. There are many foreigners in the hotel. Luis lives in a boarding house quite near the Hotel Cibeles.

Part two

En la recepción At reception

Don Ramón books in at the hotel. The receptionist gives them the various details about their rooms and hands over the keys. Don Ramón and doña Julia have a double room on the fifth floor while Marisol and doña Cristina have singles on the second floor.

En el ascensor In the lift

The porter takes don Ramón and doña Julia up to the fifth floor in the lift, having already seen Marisol and her grandmother to their rooms, which don Ramón and doña Julia like very much.

En la habitación In the room

Marisol complains that her room is small and noisy and that the shower doesn't work properly. Her mother lists the good points of the room while doña Cristina suggests she should go to bed.

Part three

Antonio y el recepcionista Antonio and the receptionist

Antonio books a single room at a hotel for three nights with breakfast included.

Juana y Marta Juana and Marta

Juana shows Marta her room and they discuss its good and bad points.

El señor Navarro y el recepcionista Mr. Navarro and the receptionist

Sr. Navarro mistakes the receptionist at his hotel for the porter. Unfortunately the lift is out of order.

El señor Ruiz y la señorita Morán Mr. Ruiz and Miss Morán

Srta. Morán tells Sr. Ruiz that she does not know and does not want to know Madrid because she does not like big cities. But, as she lives in Barcelona, she has to confess that she does not like people from Madrid.

New words in this lesson

de + el = del of the
las the
los the

el americano American
el armario wardrobe, cupboard
el ascensor lift

el baño bath
 el cuarto de baño bathroom
 el desayuno breakfast
 el día day
 el edificio building
 el final the end
 el francés Frenchman
 el inglés Englishman
 el madrileño native of Madrid
 el mozo porter
 el nombre name
 el número number
 el pasillo corridor
 el piso floor, storey
 el precio price
 el recepcionista receptionist
 el ruido noise
 el teléfono telephone
 el agua water
 la butaca armchair
 la calefacción central central
 heating
 la calle street
 la cama bed
 la capital the Capital city
 la ciudad city
 la ducha shower
 la gente people
 la habitación room
 la llave key
 la mesita de noche bedside table
 la niña girl
 la noche night
 la pensión boarding house
 la piscina swimming pool
 la recepción reception
 la recepcionista receptionist
 la tarde afternoon, evening
 la ventana window
 la verdad the truth
 la vista view
 alto tall, high
 bonito pretty
 caliente hot
 cansado tired
 central central
 cómodo comfortable
 de lujo luxury
 doble double

este this
 imposible impossible
 incluido included
 individual single
 lleno full
 magnífico magnificent
 otro other, another
 posible possible
 quinto fifth
 reservado reserved
 último last
 conocer to know
 conozco I know
 conocemos we know
 (costar) to cost
 cuestan they cost
 firmar to sign
 (funcionar) (to work) (be in order)
 funciona it works
 gustar to please
 me gusta I like (it)
 me gustan I like (them)
 nos gusta we like (it)
 hacer to do
 hay there is/are
 (querer) to want
 quiero I want
 quieres you want
 quiere you want
 son (ser) they are (to be)
 tienes (tener) you have (to have)
 vas (ir) you are going (to go)
 me me
 nos us
 nosotros us

cerca de near
 desde from
 o or
 porque because
 que that

además de besides
 a la derecha on the right
 a la izquierda on the left
 algo más anything else
 allí there
 etcétera etc.

más more
 mucho a lot, much
 perfectamente fine
 por aquí this way
 ya already, now

¿adónde? where?
 ¿por qué? why?

buenas tardes good afternoon,
 evening
 desde luego of course
 perdón sorry

¿quiere firmar aquí? will you sign
 here?
 ¿verdad? isn't it? aren't they? etc.

seis six
 siete seven
 ocho eight
 treinta y siete thirty-seven
 treinta y ocho thirty-eight
 sesenta sixty
 sesenta y seis sixty-six

Notes

Part one

- Ya estamos en Madrid: capital de España. *Now we're in Madrid: capital of Spain.*
Ya is a very useful word to know. Sometimes it can be translated as *now* or *already* but on other occasions it cannot really be translated at all.
- Conocemos la capital bien. *We know the capital well.*
Conocemos is a form of the verb *conocer* which means *to know* when referring to people or places.
- Nos gusta mucho. *We like it a lot* (literally: *us it pleases much*).
The usual way of saying you like something in Spanish is to use *gustar*: *to please*, saying in effect *it pleases me, it pleases us, etc.* Notice that *nos*: *us* is placed before *gusta*.
- Vamos a estar en Madrid dos o tres días. *We're going to be in Madrid two or three days.*
Although it ends in *a*, *día* is a masculine noun, hence *el día*: *the day*.
- Tenemos habitaciones en el Hotel Cibeles. *We have rooms at the Hotel Cibeles.*
- Es un edificio muy alto. *It's a very tall building* (literally: *It's a building very tall*).
a *Es* means *it is* as well as *he is* or *she is*.
b *un edificio muy alto* As you saw in Lesson 1 (N33a) the adjective in Spanish usually follows the noun.
- Tiene veinte pisos. *It has twenty storeys.*
Tiene means *it has* as well as *he/she has*.
- En el último piso hay una piscina. *On the top storey there is a swimming pool.*

- a As well as *in* or *at* **en** can mean *on*.
- b **Último** really means *last* and so here it can be translated as *top*. It normally comes before the noun it describes. The accent on **último** is necessary to indicate which syllable is stressed. Most Spanish words ending in a vowel (a, e, i, o, u), n or s are stressed on the last syllable but one: e.g. **piscina**, **piso**.
Where this is not the case an accent is placed on the letter that is stressed; e.g. **último**, **médico**.
- c **Hay** is a useful word meaning *there is* or *there are*.
- 9 **La vista desde allí es magnífica.** *The view from there is magnificent.*
- 10 **Las habitaciones tienen cuarto de baño y teléfono.** *The rooms have bathroom and telephone.*
- a **Las habitaciones:** *the rooms* In lesson 1 you learned **el** and **la** meaning *the* when only one thing was referred to (N20b). Now we come to the plural form **las** which is used with feminine nouns in the plural: i.e. it is the plural of **la**.
- b **Tienen:** *(they) have* You came across **tienen** in lesson 1 when it was used with **ustedes** to mean *you have*. See Appendix 4a.
- 11 **Tienen también calefacción central y agua caliente.** *They also have central heating and hot water.*
- a **También** and **calefacción** both have accents because, although they end in n, they are not stressed on the last syllable but one (N8b).
- b Notice that both the adjectives **central** and **caliente** follow the nouns they describe.
- c **Agua:** *water* is a feminine noun although when you want to say *the water* you must use **el agua**. Any feminine singular noun which begins with a or ha which is stressed uses **el** and not **la** for *the*.
- 12 **Y como es un hotel de lujo cuestan mucho.** *And as it is a luxury hotel they cost a lot.*
- a Words like **hotel** which end in a consonant, except n or s, are normally stressed on the last syllable, unlike words ending in a vowel, n or s (N8b).
- b **De lujo:** *luxury, de luxe*
- 13 **¡Qué voy a hacer!** *What am I (going) to do!*
- 14 **Estamos de vacaciones.** *We're on holiday.*
Holidays being temporary we use **estar** and not **ser** for *to be* (L1, N28). Remember **vamos de vacaciones:** *we're going on holiday*.
- 15 **Hay mucha gente en el hotel.** *There are many people in the hotel.*
- a **Mucho** as well as meaning *a lot, much* (e.g. **Nos gusta mucho**) can also mean *many*. Here it describes a feminine noun and so changes to the feminine form **mucha**.
- b **Gente** is a singular word. In English we think of *people* as plural.
- 16 **Además de españoles, hay americanos.** *Besides Spaniards there are Americans.*

Remember that words of nationality are written with a small letter in Spanish (L1, N2b).

- 17 **Hay también ingleses, franceses, etcétera.** *There are also English, French, etc.*
- a **Ingleses** is the plural of **inglés:** *Englishman*. Notice that the accent is not needed in the plural. Just as **una española** means *a Spanish woman* (L1, N10b) *an English woman* would be **una inglesa**. To Spaniards **inglés** will mean *British* as well as *English*.
- b **Franceses** is the plural of **francés.** *A French woman* is **una francesa**.
- 18 **Luis vive en una pensión.** *Luis lives in a boarding house.*
Notice the accent on **pensión** (N11a).
- 19 **La pensión está en la calle Princesa, cerca del hotel.** *The boarding house is in Princess street, near the hotel.*
- a **la calle Princesa:** *the street Princess* **Calle** always comes before the name of the street.
- b **cerca del hotel:** *near the hotel.* **Near** is **cerca de**. When **de** is followed by **el** the two words are run together and are written as one word **del**. Remember **al** for **a el** (L1, N64).

Part two

En la recepción At reception

- 20 **Buenas tardes, señorita.** *Good evening, miss.*
Buenas tardes means both *good afternoon* and *good evening*, as it is used during the period between lunch, taken in Spain between 1.30 p.m. and 3.00 p.m., and dinner, taken from about 8.30 p.m. onwards.
- 21 **¿Tiene usted habitación para nosotros?** *Have you got (a) room for us?*
- 22 **Recepcionista** *Receptionist*
This can be used for a male or female receptionist.
- 23 **¿Su nombre, por favor?** *Your name, please?*
- 24 **Sí, hay tres habitaciones reservadas para usted:** *Yes, there are three rooms reserved for you:*
- a You will have noticed that nouns like **habitación** which end in a consonant add **es** in the plural, e.g. **ingleses** (N17a); **franceses** (N17b).
- b Notice that **reservado:** *reserved* is describing **habitaciones**, which is a feminine plural noun and thus takes the form **reservadas**.
- 25 **una doble con dos camas y dos individuales.** *a double with two beds and two singles.*
- 26 **Perfectamente. ¿Tienen cuarto de baño?** *Fine. Have they got (a) bathroom?*
In questions of a general nature like this and in Note 21 above the Spanish word for *a/an* is frequently left out.

- 27 Sí, tienen baño y teléfono. *Yes, they have bath and telephone.*
- 28 ¿Está incluido el desayuno en el precio de la habitación? *Is breakfast included in the price of the room?*
Here *desayuno*: *breakfast* is referred to in a general sense, and in such cases in Spanish the definite article (*el* or *la*) is used, although we do not use *the* in English.
- 29 No, no está incluido el desayuno. *No, breakfast is not included.*
It is quite common in Spanish for the verb, here *está*, to come before its subject, as it does in this sentence. The word order makes the sentence look like a question but you can quite clearly hear that this is not the case, and the absence of question marks tells the reader that he is not reading a question. You will come across this kind of word order frequently.
- 30 ¿Qué números son? *What numbers are they?*
Son means *are* or *they are* and is a form of *ser*: *to be*. See Appendix 4a.
- 31 La habitación doble es el número sesenta y seis. *The double room is (the) number sixty-six.*
- 32 Está en el quinto piso. *It's on the fifth floor.*
En means *on* as well as *in* or *at*.
- 33 Las dos individuales son los números treinta y siete y treinta y ocho. *The two singles are (the) numbers thirty-seven and thirty-eight.*
Los is the plural form of *el* just as *las* is the plural of *la*. See N10a.
- 34 Están en el segundo piso. *They're on the second floor.*
- 35 Desde luego. Aquí está. *Of course. Here it is.*
- 36 ¿Quiere firmar aquí? *Will you sign here?*
¿Quiere?: *Do you want?* is the usual way of asking someone if he is willing to do something. It is followed by the infinitive of a verb, here *firmar*.
- 37 Naturalmente. ¿Algo más? *Of course (naturally). Anything else?*
- 38 Aquí tiene las llaves. *Here are the keys* (literally: *Here you have the keys*).

En el ascensor *In the lift*

- 39 Son bonitas las habitaciones, ¿verdad? *The rooms are nice, aren't they?*
a This is another example of the word order explained in N29.
b ¿Verdad? is a very useful word, literally meaning *truth*, which serves for all the English expressions like *aren't they?*, *isn't he?*, *won't you?*, etc.
- 40 Sí, me gustan mucho. *Yes, I like them very much. (They please me much.)*
You will remember *nos gusta mucho* (N3). Hence we can say: *me gusta*: *I like it*; *me gustan*: *I like them*; *nos gusta*: *we like it*; and *nos gustan*: *we like them*.

- 41 Mozo *Porter*
- 42 ¿Adónde vamos ahora, señor? *Where are we going to now, sir?*
Adónde is used for *where* when the meaning is *where to*.
- 43 Al quinto, por favor; al número sesenta y seis. *To the fifth, please; to number sixty-six.*
Remember how *al* is formed out of *a + el* (L1, N64).
- 44 Por aquí, al ascensor, señores... *This way to the lift, sir and ladies...*
Por aquí: *through here* is a very useful expression to remember when giving or seeking directions.
- 45 su habitación está al final del pasillo, a la izquierda. *your room is at the end of the corridor, on the left (hand side).*
a *Su* is used for *your* when referring to people you address as *usted* or *ustedes*, i.e. to one person or more.
b Remember that *del* is formed from *de + el* (L2, N19b).
c a la izquierda: *to/on the left*

En la habitación *In the room*

- 46 Mamá, no me gusta la habitación. *Mum, I don't like the room.*
No is placed before *me* or *nos* to turn *I like* or *we like* into *I don't like*: *no me gusta/n* or *we don't like*: *no nos gusta/n*.
- 47 la ducha no funciona bien. *the shower doesn't work well.*
Funcionar is used for *to work* concerning machinery while *trabajar* means *to work* when referring to people.
- 48 Vamos a ver, niña. *Let's see, girl.*
- 49 Tienes una habitación muy bonita. *You have a very nice room.*
Doña Julia is talking to a relative and so instead of saying *usted tiene* she uses the familiar form *tienes*. See Appendix 4a.
- 50 Hay una cama muy cómoda, dos butacas, un armario, la mesita de noche... *There's a very comfortable bed, two armchairs, a wardrobe (cupboard), the bedside table...*
- 51 ¿Qué más quieres? *What more do you want?*
Again doña Julia is using the familiar form (N49), whereas the receptionist used the polite form *quiere* when talking to don Ramón (N36).
- 52 Quiero otra habitación. *I want another room.*
Otro means both *other* and *another*. You must never use *un/una* with it.
- 53 No me gusta la ventana y hay mucho ruido. *I don't like the window and there's a lot of noise.*
- 54 No es posible. *It's not possible.*
- 55 El hotel está lleno. *The hotel is full.*
Remember that *estar* is used to describe temporary or impermanent features (L1, N28).
- 56 ¿Por qué no vas a la cama? *Why don't you go to bed?*

- a Vas is the familiar form; *va* the polite form.
- b You always say *a la cama*: *to the bed* in Spanish.
- 57 *Estás cansada*. *You're tired*.
- a *Estás cansada*. Here again we are talking about something temporary (N55).
- b The feminine form *cansada* is used as *doña Cristina* is talking about *Marisol*.

Part three

Antonio y el recepcionista *Antonio and the receptionist*

- 58 ¿Qué quiere usted, señor? *What do you want, sir?*
See N36.
- 59 Tres noches. *Three nights*.
- 60 En este hotel... *In this hotel...*
Este is the word for *this* to be used with masculine singular nouns.

El señor Navarro y el recepcionista *Mr. Navarro and the receptionist*

- 61 ¡Ah! Perdón. *Oh, I beg your pardon*.
- 62 a la derecha. *on the right (hand side)*.
See N45c.
- 63 Imposible. El ascensor no funciona. *Impossible. The lift is out of order (not working)*.
See N47.

El señor Ruiz y la señorita Morán *Mr. Ruiz and Miss Morán*

- 64 Yo conozco Madrid, ¿y usted? *I know Madrid, do you?*
Conozco is the *yo* form of *conocer* (N2).
- 65 Srta. Morán.
Señorita abbreviates to *Srta*.
- 66 Yo no. *I don't*.
- 67 Porque no me gustan las ciudades grandes. *Because I don't like (the) big cities*.
a Notice the difference between *¿por qué?*: *why?*, and *porque*: *because*.
b Remember that in Spanish the definite article is used with nouns used in a general sense (N28).
- 68 La verdad es que no me gustan los madrileños. *The truth is that I don't like Madrid people*.

Lección tres Lesson three

Estancia en Madrid Staying in Madrid

3

What happens

Part one

Doña Julia introduces herself. She is a good linguist and is very fond of painting and the theatre. She is delighted to be back in Madrid and this morning, accompanied by *Luis*, is going to visit the famous Prado Museum.

Part two

Tomando una copa *Having a drink*

Don Ramón orders drinks at a pavement café while the family is waiting for *Manuel*, a friend of *Luis*.

Manuel y la familia Muñoz *Manuel and the Muñoz family*

Manuel arrives and is introduced to the family. He is a TV cameraman. *Don Ramón* calls for the bill.

Manuel y el limpiabotas *Manuel and the bootblack*

Manuel discovers that he does not have time to have his shoes cleaned as he is already three quarters of an hour late for an appointment.

Part three

Fernando y Álvaro toman una copa. *Fernando and Álvaro have a drink*.

Álvaro intends to have some red wine but *Fernando* prefers beer. According to *Álvaro* wine is the proper drink for Spaniards.

La señora de Gómez y la señora de Castro van al café. *Mrs. Gómez and Mrs. Castro go to the café*.

The two ladies are going to the café for a glass of sherry.

El señor Guerra tiene prisa. *Mr. Guerra is in a hurry*.

Sr. Guerra is hurrying off to see his doctor who happens to be a very pretty young lady.

New words in this lesson

unas some

el alemán German
 el café café, coffee house
 el camarero waiter
 el cameraman cameraman
 el cigarrillo cigarette
 el cuarto quarter
 el cuba libre rum and coke
 los demás the others, rest
 el gusto pleasure
 el hombre man
 el interés interest
 el italiano Italian
 el jerez sherry
 el limpia(botas) bootblack
 el minuto minute
 el momento moment
 el museo museum
 el norte north
 los padres parents
 el papá dad
 el pasatiempo pastime, hobby
 el reloj watch, clock
 el teatro theatre
 el vino wine
 el zapato shoe

la aceituna olive
 la bota boot
 la cerveza beer
 la cita date, appointment
 la coca cola coca-cola
 la copa glass
 la copita sherry glass
 la cuenta bill, account
 la estancia stay
 la glorieta circus, square
 la hermana sister
 la hora hour
 la mañana morning
 las patatas fritas crisps, fried potatoes
 la pintura painting
 la prisa hurry
 la ración portion
 la señora Mrs., lady
 la televisión television
 la vez time

amable kind
 canario from Canary Islands

esta this
 estupendo wonderful
 favorito favourite
 guapo pretty
 medio half
 seco dry
 tarde late
 tinto red (wine)

acaban de (acabar de) they have
 just (to have just)
 (conocer) (to know)
 conoce he knows
 conocen they know
 (desear) (to want)
 desea you want
 desean you want
 esperar to wait
 fuman (fumar) I smoke (to smoke)
 hablo (hablar) I speak (to speak)
 limpiar to clean
 llegar to arrive
 naci (nacer) I was born (to be born)
 pintar to paint
 presentar to introduce (someone)
 queréis (querer) you want (to want)
 (saber) (to know)
 sé I know
 saben you know
 tardar to take time
 tienen (tener) they have (to have)
 tengo prisa (tener prisa) I'm in a
 hurry (to be in a hurry)
 tomar to take, have
 traiga (traer) bring (to bring)
 visitar to visit

él he
 ellos they
 eso that
 mí me
 tanto so much
 tú you
 te you

por in

como siempre as usual
 en seguida at once
 hoy today
 mañana tomorrow

otra vez again
 poco little
 un poco de a little
 todo de momento all for the
 moment

que which, that

buenos días good morning
 ¡caramba! good heavens!
 hasta la vista cheerio

Notes

Part one

- Buenos días, amigos. *Good morning, friends.*
 Día: day is a masculine noun despite its ending in a.
- Me llamo Julia Romero de Muñoz. *My name is Julia Romero de Muñoz.*
 Notice doña Julia's name. Her unmarried surname Romero comes first followed by de and then her married name (L1, N1b).
- Nací en Zaragoza, en el norte de España. *I was born in Zaragoza, in the north of Spain.*
 a Nací: I was born
 b Zaragoza, north-east of Madrid, is more or less halfway between Madrid and Barcelona.
- Sé hablar francés. *I can speak French.*
 a Sé, the yo form of the verb saber, means I know in the sense of to know how to do something. You have already come across conocer which means to know people or places (L2, N2).
 b The names of languages in Spanish all start with a small letter e.g. francés: French; español: Spanish.
- También hablo italiano y un poco de alemán. *I also speak Italian and a little (of) German.*
 Un poco de: a little (of) refers only to quantity and never to size, for which you must use pequeño.
- Me gusta mucho pintar. *I like painting (to paint) very much.*
 Remember how to express liking in Spanish (L2, N3, 40). When what you like is expressed by a verb, as here, the form of the verb used is the infinitive, e.g. Me gusta pintar: I like painting; Me gusta hablar: I like speaking.
- Es mi pasatiempo favorito; *It's my favourite hobby;*
 también me gusta ir al teatro. *I also like going to the theatre.*
 a Me gusta ir: I like going See N6.

- b Ir: *to go* is the infinitive form of a verb of which you have already met a number of other forms: *voy, vas, va, vamos, van*. See Appendix 4a.
- 9 ¡Qué alegría estar en Madrid otra vez! *How nice to be in Madrid again!*
¡Qué alegría! *What happiness!*
- 10 ¡Me gusta tanto! *I like it so much!*
- 11 Esta mañana voy a visitar el museo del Prado. *This morning I'm going to visit the Prado Museum.*
a Esta is the feminine form of *este* (L2, N60).
b voy a visitar You will probably have noticed by now that in Spanish the letter *v* is pronounced like a *b*, although you will occasionally hear it pronounced like an English *v*.
c The Prado is one of the world's leading art galleries.
- 12 Él conoce bien el museo. *He knows the museum well.*
a Él here does not mean *the* but *he*.
Doña Julia is using it *to* emphasize that it is Luis who knows the Prado well and not anyone else.
Notice the accent to distinguish *él*: *he* from *el*: *the*.
b Conoce is the form of *conocer* used to mean *he/she knows or you know* (someone you address as *usted*).
13 Los demás conocen poco el museo. *The others do not know the museum well.*
a Poco is the opposite of *mucho*. The literal translation of this sentence would be: *The others know little the museum.*
b Conocen means *they or you (ustedes) know*. See Appendix 5d.
- 14 Ellos no tienen mucho interés por la pintura. *They haven't got much interest in (the) painting.*
a Ellos means *they* when you are referring to male persons, a mixed group of males and females or nouns which are considered in Spanish to be masculine. It is used here to give emphasis to the fact that the others are not interested in painting.
b interés por: *interest in* The Spanish word *por* is normally translated as *by, through or for*.
c la pintura: *painting* The definite article *la* is used as *doña Julia* is referring to painting in general (L2, N28, 67b).

Part two

Tomando una copa *Having a drink*

- 15 Tomando una copa *Taking a glass*

Tomando is a form of *tomar*: *to take*, known as the gerund. This corresponds to the form in English which ends in *ing*. It is not, however, used as often. *Tomar* is normally used for *to have* when referring to food and drink.

- 16 Camarero: *Waiter*
- 17 ¿Qué desean, señores? *What would you like (do you want), ladies and gentlemen?*
Desean is a form of *desear*: *to want, wish, desire*. You may well have already noticed a pattern of endings developing for verbs whose infinitive ends in *ar*. To take *desear* as an example we have, *deseo*: *I want*; *desea*: *he/she wants, you (usted) want*; *deseamos*: *we want* and *desean*: *they/you (ustedes) want*. See Appendix 1a.
- 18 Un momento, camarero. *One moment, waiter.*
- 19 ¿Qué queréis tomar? *What would you like (do you want) to have?*
If Ramón spoke to each member of his family individually he would say *quieres*. However as he is talking to all of them at the same time he uses the form *queréis*. To people who were not relatives or friends he would say *quiere usted* or *quieren ustedes*.
- 20 Por favor, traiga un jerez, un cuba libre, una coca cola y un tinto. *Please, bring a sherry, a rum and coke, a coca-cola and a glass of red wine.*
a Listen carefully to the pronunciation of *jerez*. Our English word *sherry* is derived from the name of the town of *Jerez* in Southern Spain where sherry is made.
b Un cuba libre: *a rum and coke* literally means *a free Cuba*.
c tinto: *red* This is applied only to wine. Un tinto stands for *a glass of red wine*.
- 21 ¡Ah! Y una cerveza para mí. *Ah, and a beer for me.*
It is important to put the accent on *mí*. Without it the meaning would be *my* and not *me*.
- 22 Papá, yo quiero una ración de patatas fritas. *Dad, I want a portion of crisps.*
Patatas fritas: *fried potatoes* is used to describe any kind of fried potatoes such as crisps here, chips or French fries etc. *Fritas* is feminine plural to agree with *patatas* (L2, N24).
- 23 Eso es todo de momento. *That's all for the moment.*
- 24 Aquí llega mi amigo Manuel. *Here comes my friend Manuel.*
Mi without an accent means *my* (N21).
- 25 Tarde como siempre. *Late as usual (always).*

Manuel y la familia Muñoz *Manuel and the Muñoz family*

- 26 ¿Qué hay, Manuel? *How are things, Manuel?*
This is a colloquial form of greeting you would only use to someone you know well.
- 27 Voy a presentarte a mi familia: *I'm going to introduce you to my family:*

- Mi: *my* is used with both masculine and feminine nouns in the singular; e.g. *mi amigo* (N24); *my friend* (masculine); *mi familia: my family* (feminine).
- 28 *mis padres, mi abuela doña Cristina y mi hermana Marisol. my parents, my grandmother doña Cristina and my sister Marisol.*
- a *Mis* is used with plural nouns, masculine or feminine.
- b *Padre* means *father* but in the plural takes the meaning of *parents*.
- 29 *Acaban de llegar de Chile. They've just arrived from Chile.*
Acabar de means *to have just*. It is an ordinary *ar* verb like *desear* (N17).
De is always followed by the infinitive of a verb; e.g. *Acabo de tomar una copa. I've just had a drink.*
- 30 *Mucho gusto. (A) great pleasure.*
 This is what you should say when introduced to someone.
- 31 *Es cameraman de televisión española. He's a cameraman with (of) Spanish television.*
- a *Cameraman* is what is known as a loan word i.e. a word taken into one language from another, sometimes with a change in spelling. Listen to the pronunciation of this word and do not be misled by the English into putting the stress on the wrong place. Remember you do not use *un/una* when referring to occupations (L1, N3, 12a, 15, 20a).
- b *de televisión española De* means *of* usually but you will often find that it has to be translated by another English preposition to make sense; e.g. *de momento: for the moment.*
- 32 *¡Qué estupendo! How wonderful!*
- 33 *¿Desea tomar algo, señor? Do you wish to have something, sir?*
- a Just like *quiere* etc. (L2, N36) forms of *desear* are followed by the infinitive of another verb.
- b *Algo* may be translated as *something* or *anything*.
- 34 *¿Quiere traer un jerez seco y unas aceitunas, por favor? Will you bring a dry sherry and some olives, please?*
- a *Unas* can be used to mean *some* with feminine plural nouns like *aceitunas*. The masculine form is *unos*.
- b Remember the use of *quiere* meaning *will you...?* (L2, N36).
- 35 *En seguida, señor. At once, sir.*
- 36 *¿Fuman ustedes, señoras? Do you smoke, ladies?*
- a *Fuman* is a form of *fumar: to smoke*, another *ar* verb (N17).
- b *Manuel* naturally addresses the ladies formally, using *ustedes*.
- 37 *Son cigarrillos canarios. They're Canary Island cigarettes.*
Manuel is referring to some particular cigarettes and so does not use *los* with *cigarrillos*. Spanish cigarettes are made from tobacco grown in the Canary Islands.
- 38 *Me gustan los cigarrillos canarios. I like (the) Canary Island cigarettes.*

Here *doña Julia* is generalising. She likes Canary Island cigarettes in general and so uses the definite article *los* (N14c).

- 39 *Camarero, ¿quiere traer la cuenta, por favor? Waiter, will you bring the bill, please?*

Manuel y el limpiabotas Manuel and the bootblack

- 40 *Limpia, ¿cuánto tiempo va a tardar en limpiar los zapatos? 'Limpia', how long are you going to take to clean my (the) shoes?*
- a *Limpia* is a shortened form of *limpiabotas*.
- b *Tardar* means *to take* (of time). It is always followed by *en* before another verb.
- c *los zapatos: the shoes* With clothes and parts of the body Spaniards use the definite article rather than possessives like *mi: my; su: your* etc. It is usually obvious to whom the clothes belong.
- 41 *Tengo prisa. I'm in a hurry (I have speed).*
 In Spanish you will often find *tener* and a noun used for expressions in which we use the verb *to be*.
- 42 *¿Sus zapatos? Your shoes?*
Sus is the plural form of *su* (L1, N66). It is used here to make it quite clear whose shoes are under discussion as the bootblack is obviously not certain.
- 43 *Si, hombre. Mis zapatos. Yes, man. My shoes.*
- a *Hombre: man* is frequently used in conversations in this way.
- b By using *mis* and not *los* *Manuel* is making it clear that he is talking about his own shoes.
- 44 *Diez minutos. Ten minutes.*
- 45 *No tengo tiempo. I haven't got time.*
- 46 *Tengo una cita a las dos y media. I have an appointment at half past two.*
Las dos y media: half past two (literally *the two and half*). Notice that *las* is used and not *los*.
- 47 *¿Hoy o mañana? Today or tomorrow?*
Mañana can mean *tomorrow* or *morning* (N11).
- 48 *Son las tres y cuarto, amigo. It's a quarter past three, friend.*
 Notice that *son* is used in Spanish where in English we have *it is*. This is because we have *las dos; las tres* etc. which are all plurals. *Son las dos* means *it's two o'clock*; *son las tres: it's three o'clock*.
- 49 *¡Caramba! Good heavens!*
- 50 *Mi reloj, otra vez. My watch again.*
- 51 *Hasta la vista. Cheerio!*
- 52 *Hasta mañana, don Manuel. See you (literally till) tomorrow, don Manuel.*

Part three

Fernando y Álvaro toman una copa. *Fernando and Álvaro have a drink.*

- 53 ¿Qué tomamos? *What shall we have?*
Tomamos really means *we have/we are having* but you will often find Spaniards using this present tense form when in English we would use a future with *shall* or *will*.
- 54 ¿Y tú? *And you?*
Tú is the actual word meaning *you* when you are talking to one friend or relative. It is used with verb forms like *tienes; vas; quieres*. You have already met the form *te* which is used as the object of a verb in *voy a presentarte*.
- 55 Es buena para los alemanes. *It's alright (good) for the Germans.*
a Buena is the feminine form as it refers to *la cerveza*.
b Alemanes is the plural of *alemán: German (language or man)*.
- 56 Los españoles tomamos vino. *We Spaniards drink wine.*
Look at these sentences very carefully. *Tomamos vino: we drink wine;*
Los españoles toman vino: Spaniards drink wine; *Los españoles tomamos vino: We Spaniards drink wine.*

La señora de Gómez y la señora de Castro van al café. *Mrs. Gómez and Mrs. Castro go to the café.*

- 57 Es usted muy amable. *You're very kind.*
- 58 la Glorieta de Bilbao. *Bilbao Circus.*
Glorieta refers to a square like Piccadilly Circus and not to a circus of animals.
- 59 una copita de jerez. *a glass of sherry.*
Copita is the word used for a sherry glass with *copa* being used for wine glasses in general.
- El señor Guerra tiene prisa. *Mr. Guerra is in a hurry.*
- 60 Porque el médico es una señorita muy guapa. *Because the doctor is a very pretty young lady.*
Spaniards refer to *el médico* even when the doctor is a lady.

Lección cuatro Lesson four

Vamos a comer.
Let's go and eat.

What happens

Part one

It is the turn of Luis to introduce himself. He tells us something about his life as a student and a little about his personal interests. Today his father is taking the family to lunch at an expensive restaurant which Luis knows.

Part two

Almuerzo en el restaurante *Lunch in the restaurant*

Luis leads the way to the restaurant where the family enjoys an excellent lunch.

Part three

Pilar en el restaurante *Pilar in the restaurant*

Having discussed the menu with the waiter, Pilar orders her meal and a bottle of wine.

Julio y Mario van a clase. *Julio and Mario are going to lectures.*

Julio and Mario find that the bus is full and as they are already late go to a nearby bar instead of to their lectures.

El almuerzo de Joaquín *Joaquín's lunch*

Jaime turns up at Joaquín's house at lunchtime and asks some pointed questions about what the family are eating. Perhaps he hopes to be invited to join them.

New words in this lesson

el almuerzo lunch
el alpinismo mountaineering, climbing
el año que viene next year
el apellido surname
el autobús bus
el bar bar
el café coffee
el coñac brandy

el cordero lamb
el chocolate chocolate
el esquí skiing
el favor favour
el filete steak
el flan creme caramel
el fútbol football
el gazpacho chilled soup
el helado ice cream

el licor liqueur
el marisco shellfish
el menú menu
el pescado fish
el plato course
el pollo chicken
el postre dessert
el restaurante restaurant
el servicio service
el sueño sleep

la botella bottle
la carne meat
la carrera career, studies
la clase class
la copa glass, cup
la chica girl
las económicas economics
la ensalada salad
la esquina corner
la facultad faculty
la fresa strawberry
la hora time
la leche milk
la mesa table
la nata cream
la novia girl friend
la paella paella
la paella a la valenciana paella
Valencian style
la sopa soup
la ternera veal
las verduras vegetables
la vuelta change

agradecido grateful, obliged
asado roast
blanco white
caro expensive
cuarto fourth
de chocolate (made) of chocolate
delicioso delicious
ese that

Notes

Part one

- 1 Mis apellidos son Muñoz y Romero. *My surnames are Muñoz and Romero.* Although Spaniards have two surnames (L1, N1b), it is the first one i.e. the father's name, by which they are generally known.

que viene next
solo black (coffee)
tu your

beber to drink
comer to eat
cruzar to cross
decir to say
dormir to sleep
esperar to hope
estudiar to study
guardar to keep
pagar to pay
parecer to seem, look like
poder to be able
preferir to prefer
tener sueño to be sleepy
terminar to finish

se yourself

a veces sometimes
bastante quite, rather
de vez en cuando now and then
en efecto indeed, in fact
haga el favor de please
lejos far
menos less, minus
mientras while
no... más no... more, no longer
si if
sobre todo above all
tarde late
un poco a little

cuarenta y tres forty-three
nueve nine

¿qué hora es? what time is it?
las tres menos cinco five to three
las diez menos veinte twenty to ten
las nueve y media half past nine

- 2 Estudio económicas. *I'm studying economics.*

Estudio is the yo form of the present tense of *estudiar*: to study which is an ar verb (L3, N17 and Appendix 1a). Estudio can mean *I study* or *I am studying*.

- 3 Espero terminar la carrera el año que viene. *I hope to finish my studies next year.*

a Espero is the yo form of *esperar*: to hope, another ar verb. You have already come across *esperar* with the meaning to wait (for) (L1, N18). It is followed directly by the infinitive of another verb.

- b La carrera: *career* is the word used to describe a specific course of study.

c el año que viene: *the year which is coming* (i.e. next year).

- 4 Para ir a la facultad tomo el autobús. *To go to the faculty (building) I catch the bus.*

Tomar, of which *tomo* is the yo form, is a very useful verb. Its basic meaning is *to take* but it is used to mean *to catch* referring to buses, trains etc. and *to have* referring to food and drink, as you saw in lesson 3.

- 5 A veces tengo sueño y prefiero dormir. *Sometimes I'm sleepy and prefer to sleep.*

a tengo sueño: *I have sleep* Another example of Spaniards using *tener* with a noun when in English we have to be and an adjective (L3, N41).

- b Prefiero is the yo form of the present tense of *preferir*, an ir verb (N2). As with ar verbs the yo form of ir verbs end in o. Yo forms like *voy* (from *ir*); *soy* (from *ser*); *estoy* (from *estar*) and *sé* (from *saber*) are very much exceptions to this rule. Note that *prefiero* is followed directly by an infinitive.

- 6 Me gustan mucho el esquí y el alpinismo. *I very much like skiing and climbing.*

The definitive article is used with *esquí* and *alpinismo* as Luis is generalising (L3, N14c, 38).

- 7 También me gusta ir al fútbol de vez en cuando. *I also like going to the football from time to time.*

- 8 Pero sobre todo me gustan las chicas. *But above all I like girls.* Another generalisation, hence *las chicas*.

- 9 Me gustan todas las chicas: pero no tengo novia. *I like all girls: but I haven't got a girl friend.*

a Todas is the feminine plural form of *todo*: all, every.

- b Novia: *girl friend, sweetheart* differs from *amiga*: *friend* (female).

- 10 Hoy vamos a comer en un restaurante que conozco. *Today we're going to eat in a restaurant (that) I know.*

a We have already mentioned ar and ir verbs. Comer: to eat is an er verb. Once again the yo form ends in o — yo como: *I eat* (N5b).

- b In English we can leave out the word *that* (or *which*) in this sentence. The Spanish equivalent *que* must, however, always be used and never omitted.
- 11 Este restaurante es bastante caro pero... *This restaurant is rather expensive but...*
- 12 paga mi padre. *my father is paying.*
Paga is the third person singular form (i.e. the form that refers to él: he; ella: she; usted: you) of pagar. The third person singular of ar verbs ends in a. See Appendix 1a.

Part two

Almuerzo en el restaurante *Lunch in the restaurant*

- 13 ¿Está lejos ese restaurante que conoces? *Is that restaurant that you know far?*
a ¿Está lejos...?: *is it far...?*
b Do not confuse *ese*: *that* with *este* and *esta*: *this*.
c Conoces is the second person singular (i.e. the tú form) of the present tense of conocer.
- 14 No, está en esa esquina. *No, it's on that corner.*
Esa is the feminine singular form of *ese*. So now we can say:
este restaurante: this restaurant ese restaurante: that restaurant
esta esquina: this corner esa esquina: that corner
- 15 Bien, vamos a cruzar aquí. *Fine, let's cross here.*
- 16 ¿Quieren mesa, señores? *Do you want (a) table, ladies and gentlemen?*
This is another occasion when *un/una* is omitted in Spanish (L2, N26).
- 17 Somos cinco. *There are five of us* (literally: *We are five*).
- 18 ¿Desea ver el menú, señor? *Would you like (do you want) to see the menu, sir?*
- 19 Camarero, traiga dos gazpachos, una sopa de mariscos y dos paellas a la valenciana, por favor. *Waiter, bring two gazpachos, one shellfish soup and two paellas Valencian style, please.*
a Traiga is the usted command form of *traer*: *to bring* (L3, N20).
b Gazpacho is a chilled soup from Andalusia containing garlic, onion, tomato, cucumber, peppers etc.
c Paella a la valenciana is probably Spain's best known dish, consisting of rice, tomatoes, peppers, shellfish, chicken, fish, ham, etc.
- 20 ¿Algo para beber? *Anything to drink?*
Beber, as you can see, is another *er* verb (N10a). See Appendix 1a.
- 21 dos botellas de ese Rioja blanco, *two bottles of that white Rioja,*
Rioja wines are probably Spain's finest table wines, coming from the Logroño district of Northern Spain.

- 22 Esta paella que como es deliciosa; *This paella (that) I'm eating is delicious;*
Notice the difference in spelling and pronunciation between *esta*: *this* and *está*: *is*.
- 23 tiene de todo: carne, pescado, verduras, etc. *it has (of) everything: meat, fish, vegetables etc.*
- 24 En efecto. Parece muy buena. *Indeed. It looks very good.*
Parece is the third person singular of *parecer* which means *to look* only in the sense of *to appear; to seem*.
- 25 Cordero asado para dos; *Roast lamb for two;*
- 26 pollo asado para uno *roast chicken for one*
- 27 y filetes de ternera con patatas fritas y ensalada para dos. *and fillets of veal with fried potatoes (chips) and salad for two.*
- 28 ¡Ah! Traiga también una botella de tinto, por favor, *Ah, bring a bottle of red wine as well, please,*
- 29 para tomar mientras comemos el segundo plato. *for (us) to have while we're eating the second course.*
- 30 Camarero, ¿puede traer el postre ahora? *Waiter, can you bring the dessert now?*
Puede is a form of *poder*: *to be able*. As you can see *poder* is an *er* verb. It has the normal endings for *er* verbs (see App. 1a, 2a), but in the 1st. person singular (*yo*); 2nd. person singular (*tú*); 3rd. person singular (*él, ella, usted*) and 3rd. person plural (*ellos, ellas, ustedes*) forms the *o* changes to *ue*. Thus we have *puedo*: *I can*; *puedes*: *you can*; *puede*: *he/she/you can*; *pueden*: *they/you can*. *Poder* is followed directly by an infinitive.
- 31 Helado de chocolate para esta señora, *Chocolate ice cream for this lady,*
- 32 fresas con nata para la señorita y tres flanes. *strawberries and (with) cream for the young lady and three creme caramels.*
- 33 ¿Van a tomar café? *Are you going to have coffee?*
Café can mean either *café* or *coffee*.
- 34 Sí, traiga tres cafés solos y dos con leche. *Yes, bring three black coffees and two with milk.*
Solo: *alone* is used with *café* to indicate *black coffee*.
- 35 También queremos dos copas de coñac y una de licor Cuarenta y Tres, *We also want two glasses of brandy and one of (the) liqueur Forty-three,*
Queremos is the 1st. person plural form of the present tense of *querer* of which you have already met *quiero, quieres, quiere* and *quieren*. You may already have noticed that, in the same way as *o* changes to *ue* with some forms of *poder* (N30), so with *querer* the *e* changes to *ie*. See Appendix 2b.

- b Cuarenta y Tres: *forty-three* is a popular Spanish liqueur with a brandy and orange base.
- 36 ¿Qué hora es? *What time (hour) is it?*
- 37 Las tres menos cinco. *Five to three (Three minus five).*
Las tres stands for *the three hours* and is feminine plural to agree with horas which is implied but not expressed. The only time when las is not used is when we wish to say *one o'clock* which is *la una*.
- 38 Es un poco tarde. *It's a little late.*
- 39 Diga, señor. *Yes, sir.*
In lesson 1 you came across the form **digan** used by the taxi driver to the whole family (L1, N45a). Here the waiter is addressing only one person, don Ramón, and in such a case the correct form to use is **diga**.
- 40 Haga el favor de traer la cuenta. *Please bring the bill.*
Haga el favor de followed by an infinitive is another, and rather more formal, way of saying *please*. If you are talking to more than one person use **hagan** instead of **haga**.
- 41 Está incluido el servicio. *Service is included.*
- 42 Guárdese la vuelta para usted. *Keep the change for yourself.*
- 43 Muy agradecido, señor. *Much obliged, sir.*

Part three

- Julio y Mario van a clase. *Julio and Mario are going to lectures.*
- 44 ¿Vas en autobús? *Are you going by bus?*
Remember that **en** is used to translate *by* with vehicles (L1, N65).
- 45 Tengo clase a las nueve y media. *I have (a) lecture at half past nine.*
Clase: *class* may be translated as *lecture* when referring to universities, colleges etc.
- 46 Parece muy lleno. *It looks very full.*
- 47 Las diez menos veinte. *Twenty to ten.*
As you have seen the Spanish method of telling the time is very simple. Here are some examples: **son las tres**: *it's three o'clock*; **son las tres y cinco**: *it's five past three*; **son las tres y cuarto**: *it's a quarter past three*; **son las tres y media**: *it's half past three*; **son las cuatro menos veinte**: *it's twenty to four*; **son las cuatro menos cuarto**: *it's a quarter to four*.
Notice, **y cuarto**: *quarter past*; **menos cuarto**: *quarter to*.
Note that **es** is used with **la una** (App. 20d).
- 48 Llegamos tarde como siempre. *We're (arriving) late as usual.*
- 49 No espero más. *I'm not waiting any longer.*
No...más: *no...more, no longer*
- 50 Vamos a ese bar. *Let's go to that bar.*

El almuerzo de Joaquín Joaquín's lunch

- 51 ¿Qué come tu hermana? *What's your sister eating?*
As Jaime and Joaquín are friends they address each other as **tú**. Consequently when they wish to say *your* they use **tu** and **tus** and not **su**/sus. Notice **tú** with an accent means *you* and **tu** without the accent means *your*. This is another reason for the existence of accents in Spanish – to distinguish in writing words of the same spelling and pronunciation but of different meaning.
- 52 Ella come pollo. *She's eating chicken.*
Ella: *she* is used for emphasis.
- 53 ¿Qué comen tus padres? *What are your parents eating?*
- 54 Y tú, ¿qué comes? *And you, what are you eating?*
We have now had a number of forms of the present tense of an **er** verb:
como: *I eat, I'm eating*;
comes: *you eat, you're eating*;
come: *he/she eats, he/she is eating, you eat, you're eating*;
comemos: *we eat, we're eating*;
comen: *you/they eat, you/they are eating*.
See Appendix 1a.

Lección cinco Lesson five

Viaje a Toledo Journey to Toledo

What happens

Part one

Doña Cristina is at Atocha station, Madrid, waiting for her son to obtain the family's rail tickets for their trip to Toledo. They are going to see doña Cristina's brother-in-law, don Martín. Doña Cristina describes the scene at the station and talks about the weather.

Part two

En Informaciones *At the information office*

Don Ramón checks on train times to Toledo and the cost of first class tickets.

En la taquilla *At the ticket office*

Don Ramón buys four first class tickets to Toledo.

En el quiosco de periódicos *At the newspaper stall*

Doña Julia and Marisol examine magazines and books for the journey while doña Cristina waits impatiently.

Altavoz *Loudspeaker*

The departure of the Toledo train in seven minutes is announced.

Al tren con el mozo *To the train with the porter*

A porter carries the family's luggage to the train.

Llega el revisor. *The ticket inspector arrives.*

The ticket inspector comes to examine their tickets and don Ramón checks with him that the train is on time.

Part three

María y Carmen hablan del tiempo. *Maria and Carmen talk about the weather.*

Carmen learns from María on the telephone that it's sunny in Madrid. As it is raining in Zaragoza she decides to fly to Madrid at once.

Informaciones *Information*

Sr. Navarro learns that he has missed the only train to Burgos on Mondays by five minutes.

¿Paga el revisor? *Will the inspector pay?*

The ticket inspector catches Conchita travelling in a first class compartment with a second class ticket. On being told that she must pay the difference, she declares she will move to a third class compartment suggesting that the inspector pay the difference. She is joking of course as Spain no longer has third class railway compartments.

Paco va al teatro. *Paco goes to the theatre.*

Paco invites himself to the theatre with Dolores and Amparo as they have money and can pay for him.

New words in this lesson

unos/unas some

el altavoz loudspeaker

el andén platform

el billete ticket

el bocadillo sandwich

el bolso handbag

el colmo the "limit"

el coronel colonel
el cuñado brother in law
el departamento compartment
el dinero money
el duro five peseta coin
el empleado employee, clerk
el fin de semana weekend
el frío cold
el hermano brother
el libro book
el lunes Monday
el marido husband
el mediodía noon
el periódico newspaper
el quiosco newspaper stall
el rápido express (train)
el revisor ticket inspector
el sol sun
el suelto loose change
el taquillero booking office clerk
el tiempo weather
el tren train
el viaje journey, trip
el viudo widower

la atención attention
la bolsa bag
la cola queue
la diferencia difference
la estación station
las informaciones information,
information office
la persona person
la provincia province
la revista magazine
la salida departure
la taquilla booking office
la vía track
la viuda widow

aquel that
buen/o good
de ida single (ticket)
de ida y vuelta return (ticket)
estacionado standing (train)
impaciente impatient
largo long
mal/o bad
próximo next
rápido fast

su its
típico typical

buscar to look for
comprar to buy
efectuar to carry out, effect
importar to be important, matter
leer to read
llevar to carry
llover to rain
mirar to look
pasar to spend (time)
perder to lose, miss
sacar to take out, buy (tickets)
salir to leave, go out
sentir to be sorry, regret
valer to cost, be worth
viajar to travel

éste this (one)
lo it
nosotros/as we
vosotros/as you

con destino destination
dentro de in, within

a la hora on time
con retraso late, behind time
tan so

faltan diez minutos there are ten
minutes left
hace mal tiempo the weather is bad
hace sol it's sunny
maldita sea blast
muy amable you're very kind
no importa it doesn't matter
¿qué tiempo hace? what's the
weather like?

doce twelve
noventa y cuatro ninety-four
quinientos five hundred
setenta y seis seventy-six
trece thirteen
trescientos three hundred

¿a qué hora? at what time?
las doce twelve o'clock
las trece treinta y siete thirty-seven
minutes past one (13.37)
la una one o'clock

la una y cinco five past one

mayo May

abril April

Notes

Part one

- 1 Soy la viuda del coronel Muñoz. *I'm the widow of (the) Colonel Muñoz.*
It is customary in Spanish to use the definite article with title or rank, e.g. el señor Muñoz, el coronel Alba.
- 2 Ahora estoy en la estación de Atocha. *Now I'm at Atocha station.*
You must use de with the name of stations, airports etc. in Spanish. Remember el aeropuerto de Madrid.
- 3 Estoy esperando. *I'm waiting.*
You have already learned that *espero* can be translated as *I'm waiting*; como *as I'm eating*, and so on. However, when the action that you are describing is actually going on at the time of speaking or writing there is a special form you can use. This is composed of the appropriate part of *estar*: *to be* plus the gerund of the other verb involved. In the case of an *ar* verb, the ending of the gerund is *ando*. Hence *estoy esperando*: *I'm waiting*; *está fumando*: *he's smoking*. This is known as the present continuous tense.
- 4 No me gusta esperar. *I don't like waiting.*
- 5 Mi hijo Ramón está sacando los billetes en la taquilla. *My son Ramón is buying the tickets at the ticket office.*
Sacando is the gerund of *sacar*: *to take out*, *to buy* (of tickets). Here again we have the present continuous (N3).
- 6 Hay una cola muy larga. *There is a very long queue.*
Note very carefully that *largo* means *long* and NEVER *large*.
- 7 Hoy es lunes. *Today is Monday.*
Days of the week are written with a small letter in Spanish.
- 8 No es buen día para viajar en tren. *It's not (a) good day for travelling by train.*
a Whenever *bueno* is used before a masculine, singular noun it shortens to *buen*. Uno: *one* likewise shortens to *un*.
- b *para viajar*: *for travelling* Although the gerund in Spanish (N3) coincides with the English form ending in *ing* in the present continuous remember you must use the infinitive in Spanish after prepositions, e.g. *para viajar*: *for travelling* or other verbs, e.g. *me gusta pintar*: *I like painting*.
- 9 ¡Hay tantas personas en la estación! *There are so many people (persons) in the station!*

- a Tantos/tantas: *so many* are the plurals of *tanto/a*: *so much*.
- b Persona: *person* can mean *people* when used in the plural. In lesson 2 you met the word *gente*: *people*, which is always used in the singular (L2, N15b). If doña Cristina had used it here she would have said *tanta gente*.
- 10 Muchas de éstas viven en las provincias. *Many of these live in the provinces*
a Notice the accent on *éstas*: *these* which refers to *personas*. When *éste/ ésta*: *this* and *éstos/éstas*: *these* are used on their own without a noun following (i.e. when they are pronouns and not adjectives) an accent is placed on the first e.
- b Viven is the third person plural of the present tense of *vivir*, an *ir* verb. The endings of four forms of the present tense of *ir* verbs are the same as those for *er* verbs (L4, N54). So we have *vivo*: *I live*; *vives*: *you live*; *vive*: *he/she lives*, *you live*; *viven*: *you/they live*.
- 11 y pasan el fin de semana en Madrid. *and spend the weekend in Madrid.*
el fin de semana: *the end of week*
- 12 Hoy hace mal tiempo: *Today the weather-is bad* (literally: *Today it makes bad weather*):
a Hace mal tiempo. A number of expressions regarding the weather in Spanish are formed with *hace*: *it makes* from *hacer*: *to make*, followed by a noun e.g. *hace mal tiempo*: *the weather is bad*.
hace buen tiempo: *the weather is good*.
- b Malo: *bad* is like *bueno* and *uno*, dropping the *o* before a masculine, singular noun (N8a and App. 13g).
- 13 hace frío y está lloviendo. *it's cold and it's raining.*
a Hace frío is another expression made up of *hace* + noun (N12a).
- b Está lloviendo is the present continuous form of *llover*: *to rain*. The gerund of *er* and *ir* verbs ends in *iendo*.
- 14 ¡Qué típico de abril! *How typical of April!*
Months, like days, are written with a small letter (N7).
- 15 En mayo siempre hace sol. *In May it's always sunny (it makes sun).*
- 16 Nosotros vamos a Toledo para visitar a Martín. *We're going to Toledo to visit Martín.*
a Nosotros: *we*
b para visitar: *to visit* Para: *for*, in order to coming before an infinitive, gives the idea of purpose.
c para visitar a Martín: *to visit Martín* When the direct object of a verb is a definite, specific person a is placed before the person in question. This is known as the 'personal a'.

Visitamos a Martín: *We're visiting Martín.*
Espero a mi hijo: *I'm waiting for my son.*

- 17 **Martín es mi cuñado: es el hermano de mi marido.** *Martin is my brother-in-law; he's my husband's brother.*
- a Note the following useful pairs: **el cuñado: brother-in-law; la cuñada: sister-in-law; el hermano: brother; la hermana: sister.**
- b **el hermano de mi marido: the brother of my husband** There is no equivalent to apostrophe *s* in Spanish; one must use **de: of.**
e.g. **el hermano de Jaime: Jaime's brother**
la abuela de Marisol: Marisol's grandmother
- 18 **Son las doce menos diez.** *It's ten to twelve.*
- 19 **El tren sale al mediodía.** *The train leaves at noon (midday).*
Sale: leaves from salir: to leave, to go out.

Part two

En Informaciones At the information office

- 20 **¿A qué hora sale el próximo tren para Toledo?** *(At) what time does the next train for Toledo leave?*
- a You have now met the two main question forms involving time by the clock. **¿Qué hora es?: What time is it? ; ¿A qué hora...?: (At) what time...?**
- b **Próximo: next** normally comes before the noun it describes.
- 21 **Empleado Clerk** (literally: *employee*)
- 22 **Hay un rápido que sale a las doce** *There's an express which leaves at twelve*
- 23 **y llega a Toledo a las trece treinta y siete, señor.** *and arrives in Toledo at thirteen thirty-seven, sir.*
- a Remember **llegar a: to arrive in**
- b **las trece treinta y siete: thirteen thirty-seven** The twenty-four hour clock is normal in Spain where transport is concerned.
- 24 **¿Cuánto vale el billete de primera clase?** *How much is a first class ticket?*
- a **¿Cuánto vale?: how much is it?** is a very useful expression and can be used as an alternative to **¿cuánto es?** and **¿cuánto cuesta?: how much does it cost?**
- b **el billete de primera clase: the ticket of first class**
- 25 **¿De ida y vuelta o sólo de ida?** *Return or only single?*
Un billete de ida y vuelta: a return ticket (a ticket of going and returning);
Un billete de ida: a single ticket.
- 26 **Noventa y cuatro pesetas.** *Ninety-four pesetas.*

En la taquilla At the ticket office

- 27 **Taquillero Booking clerk**
- 28 **Cuatro billetes de primera a Toledo,** *Four first class tickets to Toledo.*
The word **clase** may be left out in such phrases.
- 29 **Son trescientas setenta y seis pesetas.** *They're three hundred and seventy-six pesetas.*
Trescientas is the feminine form of **trescientos: three hundred.** The hundreds in Spanish are plural adjectives with masculine and feminine forms, except for **ciento: one hundred.**
- 30 **Tenga usted: quinientas pesetas.** *Here you are: five hundred pesetas.*
a **Tenga usted** is a useful alternative to **aquí tiene.**
b **quinientos/as: five hundred** (see App.17a).
- 31 **Lo siento pero no tengo suelto.** *I'm sorry but I haven't got change.*
a **Lo siento: I'm sorry** (literally: *I feel it*).
- b **suelto: loose**
- 32 **No importa, señor.** *It doesn't matter, sir.*
importar: to be important

En el quiosco de periódicos At the newspaper stall

- 33 **¿Qué esperáis ahora?** *What are you waiting for now?*
Esperáis is the second person plural of the present tense of **esperar.** This is the form that you must use if speaking to two or more friends or relations. You have now met all the forms of the present tense of **ar** verbs (App. 1a). Of **esperar**, for example, they are as follows:
- | | | | |
|----------------|----------------------------|------------------|-----------------------------------|
| espero | <i>I hope</i> | esperamos | <i>we hope</i> |
| esperas | <i>you hope (familiar)</i> | esperáis | <i>you hope (familiar plural)</i> |
| espera | <i>he/she hopes</i> | esperan | <i>they hope</i> |
| | <i>you hope (polite)</i> | | <i>you hope (polite plural)</i> |
- 34 **¿Qué estáis haciendo?** *What are you doing?*
- a Here we have another example of the present continuous tense (N3).
- b **Estáis** is the second person plural of the present tense of **estar.** The full present tense is **estoy; estás; está; estamos; estáis; están.**
- c **Haciendo** is the gerund of **hacer** (N13b).
- 35 **Un momento, abuelita.** *One moment, grandma.*
Abuelita is an affectionate form of **abuela** (L1, N42b).
- 36 **Estoy mirando estas revistas.** *I'm looking at these magazines.*
Another present continuous. Notice there is no Spanish word for **at** in this sentence as **mirar** means **to look at.**
- 37 **Y yo voy a comprar unos libros para leer en el tren.** *And I'm going to buy some books to read on the train.*
- a **Unos**, the plural of **un: a, an, one**, is used in the sense of **some.** The feminine form is **unas.**

- b para leer en el tren. Para indicates purpose and is followed by an infinitive (N8b, 16b).
- 38 Sois el colmo. *You're the limit.*
Sois is the second person plural form of the present tense of *ser* (N33, 34b). The full present tense of *ser* is *soy; eres; es; somos; sois; son*.
- 39 Vamos a perder el tren. *We're going to miss the train.*
Perder: *to lose* is used for *to miss* when referring to transport.
- 40 ¿Por qué eres tan impaciente, abuela? *Why are you so impatient, grandmother?*
Eres is the second person singular (tú) form of the present tense of *ser*, used as Marisol is only speaking to her grandmother.
- 41 Sabéis que no me gusta esperar. *You know (that) I don't like waiting.*
Sabéis is the second person plural form of *saber*. It indicates that the ending of this form of an *er* verb is *éis*. Hence we have:
- | | | | | |
|--|-------|---------|-------|---------|
| | comer | | saber | |
| | como | comemos | sé | sabemos |
| | comes | coméis | sabes | sabéis |
| | come | comen | sabe | saben |
- 42 Faltan diez minutos. *There are ten minutes left.*
Faltar: *to be left*
- 43 Bueno, vamos a buscar un mozo. *Good, let's go and look for a porter.*
a Buscar: *to look for*. No word meaning *for* is required just as we did not use one meaning *at* with *mirar* (N36). Do not confuse *buscar: to look for*; *mirar: to look at*; *parecer: to look, to seem, to appear*.
- b No personal *a* is needed before *un mozo* as they are looking for any porter and not a particular one (N16c).

Altavoz Loudspeaker

- 44 ¡Atención, atención! *Attention, attention!*
- 45 Tren rápido con destino Toledo, estacionado en vía segunda, andén tercero, va a efectuar su salida dentro de siete minutos. *Fast train for Toledo, standing on track two, platform three, will leave within seven minutes (literally: Fast train with destination Toledo, standing on second track, third platform, is going to make its departure within seven minutes).*
- Al tren con el mozo *To the train with the porter*
- 46 ¿Quiere llevar este equipaje al rápido de Toledo, por favor? *Will you take this luggage to the Toledo express, please?*
- 47 Estas dos maletas y estos tres bolsos de mano. *These two cases and these three bags.*
Estos/estas: *these* are the plurals of *este/esta: this*.

- 48 ¿Le gusta este departamento, señor? *Do you like this compartment, sir?*
- 49 cinco duros. *five duros (twenty-five pesetas).*
Duro is the old word for a five peseta coin which you may still occasionally hear.
- Llega el revisor. *The ticket inspector arrives.*
- 50 ¿Vamos con retraso? *Are we running late?*
con retraso: *with delay*
- 51 Va a la hora. *It's on time.*
Ir a la hora: *to be on time* and ir con retraso: *to run late* are useful terms to remember when talking about transport.
- 52 Muy amable. *Very kind.*

Part three

María y Carmen hablan del tiempo. *María and Carmen talk about the weather.*

- 53 ¿Qué tiempo hace en Zaragoza? *What's the weather like in Zaragoza?*
a ¿Qué tiempo hace?: *What's the weather like?*
b Tiempo means both *weather* and *time* (L1, N26a).
- 54 Aquí hace muy buen tiempo: hace mucho sol. *Here the weather is very good: it's very sunny.*
Notice that because *sol* is a noun you have to use the adjective *mucho* with it to say *very sunny*: *mucho sol* and not *muy*, the usual word for *very*.
- 55 ¿Qué vas a hacer esta tarde? *What are you going to do this afternoon?*
Hacer: *to do, to make* (N12a).

Informaciones Information

- 56 Los lunes sólo hay un tren para Burgos. *On Mondays there is only one train to Burgos.*
a Los lunes: *on Mondays*; el lunes: *on Monday*. No word for *on* is used in Spanish with days of the week. Notice that days of the week are masculine, as are the months.
- b Sólo with an accent means *only*; without an accent (*solo*) it means *alone* (L4, N34).
- 57 Sale a la una. *It leaves at one.*
- 58 ¡Maldita sea! *Blast!*
¡Maldita sea! is a pretty inoffensive exclamation.
- ¿Paga el revisor? *Will the inspector pay?*
- 59 ¿Qué hay que hacer? *What's to be done? (Literally: What is there to do?)*

60 Pagar la diferencia. *Pay the difference.*

Paco va al teatro. *Paco goes to the theatre.*

61 ¿Qué tenéis en aquella bolsa? *What have you got in that bag?*

a Paco is talking to two friends so he uses the form **tenéis** (N33). We have now had all the forms of the present tense of **tener**: *to have*; **tengo**; **tienen**; **tiene**; **tenemos**; **tenéis**; **tienen**.

b We have already used **ese/esa**: *that*. Here we have another word for *that* in *aquella* which is used to describe objects further away from the speaker. Hence a Spaniard can distinguish between **esta bolsa**: *this bag*; **esa bolsa**: *that bag*; **aquella bolsa**: *that bag (over there)*.

c Bolsa is a larger bag than **un bolso (de mano)**.

62 Tenemos unos bocadillos. *We have some sandwiches.*

63 ¿Y en aquel bolso? *And in that bag?*

Aquel is the masculine form of **aquella** (N61b).

64 Dinero, naturalmente. *Money, of course.*

65 ¿Adónde vais ahora? *Where are you going now?*

Vais is the correct form of **ir**: *to go* for Paco to use to several friends.

The complete present tense of **ir** is; **voy**, **vas**, **va**, **vamos**, **vais**, **van**.

66 Nosotras vamos al teatro, ¿y tú? *We're going to the theatre, what about you?*

Nosotras is the feminine form of **nosotros**: *we*, used here for emphasis.

67 Hoy pagáis vosotras. *Today you're paying.*

Paco emphasises the fact that the girls are going to pay by using **vosotras**: *you* as the subject of a verb. Thus, you now know the four different words used for *you* as the subject of a verb. They are the familiar forms **tú** (singular) and **vosotros/as** (plural) and the polite forms **usted** (singular) and **ustedes** (plural). You will find a complete list of subject pronouns in App. 14a.

Lección seis Lesson six

En Toledo In Toledo

What happens

Part one

Don Martín Muñoz, the brother-in-law of doña Cristina, tells us about his house in Toledo and how he spends his time. He is a bachelor and is looked after by his housekeeper, Petra, who worries about his health.

Part two

En el casino *In the club*

Don Martín takes doña Cristina and don Ramón to the local club to meet the parish priest, don Pascual. They are all old friends and settle down for a friendly game of cards.

Charla con Petra *A chat with Petra*

Petra makes some suggestions concerning sightseeing in Toledo. Doña Julia is keen to visit the house of the famous sixteenth century painter, el Greco to see some of his paintings. Marisol is not keen.

Tomando un refresco *Having a drink*

Marisol and doña Julia decide to have something to eat and drink after their sightseeing.

En el estanco *At the tobacconist's*

Doña Julia and Marisol go to the tobacconist's, as doña Julia wants cigarettes and matches. In Spanish tobacconists, which are state run monopolies, one can also buy postage stamps. Marisol buys some stamps and some postcards.

Part three

En el estanco *At the tobacconist's*

A heavy smoker tries to buy fourteen packets of a particular brand of cigarettes but the tobacconist only has seven.

Visitando monumentos *Sightseeing*

A guide conducting a group of tourists round Toledo finds that at least one lady in his party is tired and hungry.

¿Para qué va Diego al café? *What does Diego go to the café for?*

It seems that the main attraction at the café for Diego is not the food and drink.

New words in this lesson

el aspecto appearance
el caballero gentleman
el casino social club
el cliente client, customer

el corazón heart
el cuadro picture
el dependiente shop assistant
el estanco tobacconist's

el extranjero abroad
 el guía guide
 el lado side
 el monumento monument
 el paquete packet
 el párroco parish priest
 el refresco cold drink
 el río river
 el sello stamp
 el sobrino nephew
 el santo saint
 el tío uncle
 el turista tourist
 el ama de llaves housekeeper
 la baraja pack of cards
 la caja box
 la carta letter
 la casa house
 la catedral cathedral
 la cerilla match
 la cosa thing
 la charla chat
 la gamba prawn
 el hambre hunger
 la idea idea
 la iglesia church
 la marca brand
 la misa Mass
 la pena trouble
 la pintura painting, picture
 la postal postcard
 la puerta gate
 la salud health
 la sed thirst
 la sorpresa surprise
 la vida life
 aburrido boring
 alguno some
 antiguo old
 casado married
 extranjero foreign
 joven young
 nacional national
 preocupado worried
 seguro sure
 sexto sixth
 su his
 todo every, all

toledano from Toledo
 varios/as several

andar to walk
 apreciar to appreciate
 creer to believe
 dar to give
 dejar (de) to fail (to), omit
 empezar(ie) to begin
 encontrar(ue) to meet
 enseñar to show
 entender(ie) to understand
 ganar to win
 jugar(ue) to play
 oír to hear
 olvidar to forget
 recomendar(ie) to recommend
 tener hambre to be hungry
 tener que to have to
 tener sed to be thirsty
 valer la pena to be worth the
 trouble, to be worth it
 venir to come
 ella she
 me me
 se one, you, they
 no...nada not anything
 al otro lado de on the other side of
 contra against
 en cambio on the other hand
 hoy día nowadays, these days
 incluso even
 luego then
 por fortuna fortunately
 tan...como as...as
 para qué? what...for?, why?
 a ver let's see
 ni más ni menos no more no
 less
 ¿qué es de su vida? how's life?
 ¡qué pesadez! what a bore!
 ¡qué sorpresa! what a surprise!
 se dice they say
 sí tengo I do have
 catorce fourteen

Notes

Part one

- 1 Para ustedes tío Martín. *For you uncle Martin.*
 Tío: *uncle* is used familiarly for older men as a term of endearment.
- 2 Tengo sesenta y siete años: pero mi corazón es joven. *I'm sixty-seven: but my heart is young.*
- 3 Soy toledano. *I'm from Toledo.*
- 4 Si no conocen Toledo, vengan en seguida. *If you don't know Toledo, come at once.*
 Vengan is the *ustedes* command form of the verb *venir*: *to come*. You may remember *traiga*, the *usted* command form of *traer* (L4, N19a). To form the *usted* and *ustedes* commands of a verb you take the *yo* form of the present tense, remove the *o* ending and replace it with *e* and *en* for *ar* verbs and *a* and *an* for *er* and *ir* verbs. (App. 1b)
- 5 Vale la pena: créanme. *It's worth it: believe me.*
 a Valer la pena: *to be worth the trouble*
 b Crean is the *ustedes* command form of *creer*: *to believe*. Notice that when *me*: *me* is added to the word an accent is placed on the *e*. This is to indicate that the stress in speech remains on the same letter although an extra syllable has been added (L2, N8b, App.18a).
- 6 Vivo en una casa grande y antigua. *I live in a large, old house.*
 Notice that *y* is placed between two adjectives which come together.
- 7 Por fortuna no estoy casado. *Fortunately I'm not married.*
 Estar is always used with *casado/a* to indicate the state of being married or unmarried. Do not confuse *casado*: *married* with *cansado*: *tired*.
- 8 En cambio sí tengo un ama de llaves. *On the other hand I do have a housekeeper.*
 a sí tengo: *I do have* *Sí* placed before the verb gives the same kind of emphasis as *do* in English.
 b un ama de llaves: *a housekeeper* This word is, naturally, feminine. However feminine words that begin with a stressed *a* or *ha* use *un* and *el* in place of *una* and *la* (App. 12a, b).
- 9 Ella se llama Petra. *Her name is Petra.*
 Ella: *she* is used for purposes of emphasis.
- 10 Hace veinte años que vive con nosotros. *She's lived with us for twenty years (It makes twenty years that she lives with us).*
 Hace...que is the usual way of expressing in Spanish a state of affairs which, having begun in the past, still continues in the present. You will notice that the verb (*vive*) following *que* is in the present tense whereas in English we use the present perfect (*has lived*) or the present perfect continuous (*has been living*). Other examples:

Hace dos horas que espero aquí. *I've been waiting here for two hours.*

Hace tres años que es médico. *He's been a doctor for three years.*

- 11 Está siempre preocupada por mi salud. *She's always worried about (for) my health.*

- 12 ¡Qué pesadez! *What a bore!*

- 13 Hoy día tengo muy poco que hacer. *Nowadays I have very little to do.*

- 14 Todas las tardes voy al casino, donde encuentro a Pascual. *Every evening I go to the club, where I meet Pascual.*

- a Todas las tardes: *all the evenings* hence every evening.

- b Casino is not a gambling casino but a place where people meet to talk, drink and play friendly games of cards, etc.

- c Encuentro is the yo form of the present tense of encontrar, a verb in which the o changes to ue just as it does with poder (L4, N30). Such verbs are known as radical changing verbs and from this lesson on will be listed in the lesson vocabularies in this way: encontrar(ue): *to meet* (App. 2a).

- 15 Pascual es párroco de la iglesia de San Roque. *Pascual is the parish priest of the church of San Roque.*

San is a short form of santo: *saint* which is always used before the name of the saint in question unless it begins with Do or To. The feminine form santa never changes.

- 16 Le gusta comer y beber bien. *He likes to eat and drink well.*

Le gusta means *he/she likes*, as well as *you like* (L5, N48).

- 17 Mi sobrino Ramón y su familia vienen a Toledo. *My nephew Ramón and his family are coming to Toledo.*

- a Su means *his* as well as *your, its*.

- b Vienen is the third person plural form of venir: *to come* (App. 4a).

Part two

En el casino *In the club*

- 18 ¿Qué es de su vida? *How's life (what is of your life)?*

Notice that while don Martín addresses the others as tú there is a certain degree of formality between doña Cristina and don Ramón on the one hand and the priest on the other, due to their respective ages and respect for their status in life.

- 19 ¡Qué sorpresa! *What a surprise!*

As with ¡qué pesadez! (N12) there is no article used in the Spanish phrase. ¡Qué...! can be considered to mean *what a...*!

- 20 Tiene usted muy buen aspecto. *You look very well (You have very good appearance).*

- 21 Usted parece tan joven como siempre. *You look as young as ever.*

Tan... como is the equivalent of *as...as*.

- 22 ¿Jugamos a la baraja? *Shall we play (at) cards?*

Jugar a: *to play (at)* is used for games and sports, but not for musical instruments. The a must not be omitted when the game is mentioned. Jugar(ue) changes u to ue just as poder and encontrar change o to ue (N14c).

- 23 ¡Magnífica idea! *A wonderful idea!*

- 24 Tú y yo contra tu madre y Pascual. *You and I against your mother and Pascual.*

- 25 A ver si ganamos. *Let's see if we'll win.*

A ver is a commonly used alternative for vamos a ver.

- 26 Ya podéis empezar. *You can start.*

- a Remember that ya cannot always be translated.

- b Podéis is the vosotros form of poder(ue) in which the o does not change to ue (App. 2a). These radical changes in fact take place when the root vowel o bears the stress of the word. So we have puedo; puedes; puede; pueden but poder; podemos; podéis.

- c Empezar(ie) is a radical changing verb in which the e changes to ie as with querer (L4, N35a, App. 2b).

Charla con Petra *A chat with Petra*

- 27 Quiero enseñar a Marisol algunos de los monumentos típicos. *I want to show (to) Marisol some of the typical sights (monuments).*

You must always put in a after enseñar if you mention the person you are showing something to.

- 28 No dejen de ver la catedral. *Don't fail (omit) to see the cathedral.*

Dejen is the ustedes command form of dejar (N4).

- 29 Allí se puede oír misa. *There one can hear Mass.*

Se: *one* is an indefinite, vague word which can be translated as *one, you, they*.

- 30 Visiten también la Puerta del Sol y no olviden la Puerta Bisagra. *Visit, too, the Gate of the Sun and don't forget the Bisagra Gate.*

- a Visiten and olviden are respectively the ustedes command forms of visitar and olvidar.

- b The gates mentioned are two of the gates of Toledo which is an old walled city surrounded on three sides by the river Tagus (el Tajo).

- 31 ¿No recomienda usted también la Casa del Greco? *Don't you also recommend the house of el Greco?*

- a recomendar(ie): *to recommend* (N26b, App. 2b).

- b La Casa del Greco is the house of the sixteenth century Greek painter Domenico Theotocopoulos (1541-1614) who lived and worked in Toledo for nearly forty years.

- 32 Yo no entiendo nada de pintura, pero se dice que es muy bonita. *I don't understand anything about painting, but they say (that) it's very pretty.*
- a no entiendo nada: *I don't understand nothing* Nada means *nothing* but when used after a verb with *no* preceding the verb the meaning is *not...anything*: e.g. *No tengo nada: I haven't anything, I have nothing.*
- b entender (ie): *to understand* (N26b, App. 2b).
- c se dice que: *it is said that, one says that, they say that* (N29). This is a very common and useful expression.
- 33 ¿por qué quieres siempre ver cuadros? *why do you always want to see pictures?*
- 34 ¡Es tan aburrido! *It's so boring.*
- 35 Estoy segura que incluso tú puedes apreciar las pinturas del Greco. *I'm sure that even you can appreciate the paintings of el Greco.*
estar seguro: *to be sure, certain*

Tomando un refresco *Having a drink*

- 36 estoy cansada de andar. *I'm tired of walking.*
- 37 ¿Podemos tomar algún refresco? *Can we have a (some) drink?*
- a Algún is a shortened form of alguno: *some, any* which is used before a masculine singular noun in the same way as bueno becomes buen (L5, N8a) and malo becomes mal (L5, N12b). Notice the accent that is now necessary on algún (N5b).
- b Refresco refers to a long, cold drink.
- 38 Tengo mucha sed. *I'm very thirsty (I have much thirst).*
- 39 Tengo hambre también. *I'm hungry (I have hunger) too.*
Tener hambre and tener sed are similar to tener prisa (L3, N41) and tener sueño (L4, N5a). As tener is used with a noun you have to use mucho/a to translate the English *very*. Hambre and sed are both feminine and hambre is one of those words which use un and el instead of una and la (N8b).
- 40 Luego vamos a ir a ese estanco. *Then let's go to that tobacconist's.*
- 41 Tengo que comprar varias cosas. *I have to buy several things.*
- a tener que: *to have to*
- b Varios/as: *some, several* is one of those adjectives that come before a noun.

En el estanco *At the tobacconist's*

- 42 Dependiente *Shop assistant*
- 43 Quisiera dos paquetes de cigarrillos. *I'd like two packets of cigarettes.*
Quisiera is a more polite way of asking for something than quiero.

- 44 ¿Qué marcas tienen? *What brands have you got?*
Although doña Julia is talking to just one person she uses the plural form *tienen* because she is really thinking of him as one out of a number of people who work in the shop. He answers in a similar way by using the *nosotros* form.
- 45 Tenemos todas las marcas nacionales y varias extranjeras. *We have all the national brands and several foreign (ones).*
- 46 Déme... *Give me...*
Dé is the usted command form of dar: *to give* (App. 4h). The accent is placed on dé to distinguish it from de: *of, from*.
- 47 Y tres cajas de cerillas. *And three boxes of matches.*
- 48 ¿quieres alguna postal? *do you want any postcards (lit. postcard)?*
- 49 quiero tres postales y cinco sellos: *I want three postcards and five stamps:*
- 50 para dos cartas *for two letters*
- 51 ¿Son para el extranjero, señorita? *Are they for abroad, miss?*
el extranjero: *abroad*
- 52 Eso es todo. *That's all.*
Eso is used for *that*, and not ese/esa, when you are referring to something vague or summing everything up, as here (L3, N23).
- 53 ¿Quiere decirme cuánto es, por favor? *Will you tell me how much it is, please?*
decir: *to say, to tell.*

Part three

En el estanco *At the tobacconist's*

- 54 Quisiera esos cigarrillos *I'd like those cigarettes*
Esos: *those* is the plural of ese: *that*. The plural of esa is esas.
- 55 catorce paquetes. *fourteen packets.*
- 56 Ni más ni menos. *No more no less.*

Visitando monumentos *Sightseeing*

- 57 Guía *Guide*
- 58 Señoras y caballeros, miren esas iglesias *Ladies and gentlemen, look at those churches*
- a caballeros: *gentlemen* This is an alternative to señores.
- b Miren is the ustedes command form of mirar.
- 59 ¿Habla usted de aquellas casas o de aquellos monumentos? *Are you talking about those houses or about those monuments?*
Aquellos/aquellas are the plural forms of aquel/aquella. Remember the difference between aquel and ese (L5, N61b).

60 al otro lado del río Tajo. *on the other side of the river Tagus.*

¿Para qué va Diego al café? *What does Diego go to the café for?*

61 ¿para qué?: *for what?*

62 Coma usted un bocadillo de gambas. *Have (eat) a prawn sandwich.*
Coma is the usted command form of comer (N4).

63 Beba usted una cerveza. *Drink a beer.*
Beba is the usted command form of beber.

Lección siete Lesson seven

Petra va de compras. Petra goes shopping.

What happens

Part one

Petra outlines a typical week in her position as don Martín's housekeeper. She has a lot to do and is always busy. She laments the fact that don Martín takes little notice of her concern about his health.

Part two

En la tienda de comestibles *At the grocer's*

Petra goes to the grocer's and buys bread, olive oil, butter, eggs, cheese and jam. She comments on how expensive everything is.

En la frutería *At the greengrocer's*

Petra buys a wide selection of fruit and vegetables, but has to withhold payment until the following day as she has no money left following her visit to the grocer's.

Part three

Hablando de verduras *Talking about vegetables*

María and Carmen discuss which vegetables they each prefer. Carmen is afraid of getting fat and so never eats potatoes.

Pepe trabaja. *Pepe works.*

Juan and Pepe are talking about Pepe's normal daily activities. It appears that he only works on Sundays.

En la tienda de comestibles *At the grocer's*

A lady buying butter and jam seems surprised that the shop assistant should think that she eats them for breakfast.

New words in this lesson

el aceite olive oil
el cine cinema
los comestibles provisions
el consejo advice
Dios God
el escándalo scandal
el frutero greengrocer, fruiterer
el huevo egg
el kilo kilo
el litro litre
el melocotón peach
el melón melon
el pan bread
el plátano banana
el precio price
el queso cheese
el repollo cabbage
el tamaño size
el tarro jar, pot
el tendero shopkeeper
el tomate tomato

la amiga friend
la barra loaf
la cebolla onion
la coliflor cauliflower
la docena dozen
la edad age
la frutería greengrocer's,
fruiterer's
la judía french bean
la lista list
la mantequilla butter
la manzana apple
la mermelada jam
la mujer woman
la naranja orange
la patata potato
la pera pear
la tienda shop

la uva grape

fresco fresh
generoso generous
grande big, large
maduro ripe
mediano medium
medio half
mismo same
ocupado busy
séptimo seventh
tierno tender
verde green

bastar to be enough
coser to sew
creer to think
cuidarse to look after oneself
deber must
engordar to get fat
estar ocupado to be busy
hacer caso to take notice, heed
lavar to wash
necesitar to need
perdonar to forgive, excuse
planchar to iron
quedar to have/be left
recordar(ue) to remember
reñir(i) to quarrel
seguir(i) to continue
sermonear to nag
servir(i) to serve
subir to go up
volver(ue) to return

le him
me for me
se himself

después de after
 bastante fairly, quite, enough
 de compras shopping
 demasiado too much
 más o menos more or less
 menos mal just as well, thank
 goodness
 nunca never
 por la tarde in the afternoon, evening
 ¡qué caro! how expensive!

¡qué escándalo! how shocking!
 ¡Válgame Dios! Good Heavens!

once eleven

martes Tuesday
 miércoles Wednesday
 jueves Thursday
 domingo Sunday

Notes

Part one

- 1 de treinta y nueve años de edad. (of) thirty-nine years of age.
 The d of words ending in ad is sometimes pronounced.
- 2 Hace ya veinte años que sirvo a la familia. I've already been serving the family for twenty years.
- a Remember the use of *hace...que* and the present tense of the verb (L6, N10).
- b Sirvo is the yo form of the present tense of *servir(i)*: to serve. *Servir* is one of a group of radical changing verbs in which e changes to i (L6, N26b, c) (App. 2c).
- c Notice the personal a following *sirvo* (L5, N16c).
- 3 Siempre estoy ocupada: I'm always busy:
- 4 ¡hay tanto que hacer! there's so much to do!
- 5 Los lunes tengo que lavar la ropa. On Mondays I have to wash the clothes.
- a tener que: to have to
- b Notice that the word for *clothes* in Spanish is singular: *la ropa*.
- 6 Los martes tengo que coser. On Tuesdays I have to sew.
- 7 Los miércoles siempre hay cosas que planchar. On Wednesdays there are always things to iron.

Notice how *que* is used in expressions like the following:

cosas que planchar: things to iron
 tanto que hacer: so much to do
 algo que declarar: anything to declare
 nada que ver: nothing to see

- 8 Los jueves salgo de compras, y por la tarde mi amiga y yo vamos al cine.
 On Thursdays I go out shopping, and in the afternoon my friend and I go to the cinema.
- a Salgo is the yo form of the present tense of *salir*.

- b de compras: shopping
- c por la tarde: in the afternoon (evening) Por is used for *in* referring to parts of the day when no time by the clock is expressed.
- 9 Los domingos, después de ir a misa, visito a mi hermana Tomasa.
 On Sundays, after going to Mass, I visit my sister Tomasa.
- 10 Don Martín es muy bueno y generoso; Don Martín is very good and generous;
- 11 pero a veces reñimos un poco. but at times we quarrel a little.
- a a veces: at times Veces is the plural of *vez*: time. Nouns ending in *z* change *z* to *ces* in the plural. *Ve* means *time* in the sense of *occasion* and should not be confused with *tiempo*: *time* (in a general sense) and *hora*: *hour*, *time by the clock*.
- b Reñimos is the nosotros form of the present tense of *reñir(i)* (N2b).
- 12 Don Martín come poco y fuma demasiado. Don Martín eats little and smokes too much.
- 13 Debe cuidarse: He must look after himself:
- a cuidar: to look after
- b se: himself, herself, yourself, themselves, yourselves. Here *se* is a reflexive pronoun and so has a different meaning from the vague, impersonal *se* you have already met (L6, N29).
- 14 ya no es joven; he's no longer young;
 ya no: no longer
- 15 pero él no hace caso de mis consejos. but he takes no notice of my advice.
- a hacer caso de: to take notice of
- b mis consejos: my advice Notice that this is plural. *Un consejo* would refer only to one piece of advice.
- 16 No le gusta ser sermoneado por una mujer. He doesn't like to be nagged by a woman.

Part two

En la tienda de comestibles At the grocer's

- 17 Tendero Shopkeeper
- 18 Quiero dos barras de pan y un litro de aceite. I want two loaves of bread and a litre of olive oil.
- 19 ¿Alguna otra cosa? Anything else (some other thing)?
- 20 Aquí tengo una lista de las cosas que necesito. Here I have a list of the things (that) I need.
- 21 Medio kilo de mantequilla, una docena de huevos, un cuarto kilo de queso y un tarro de mermelada. Half (a) kilo of butter, a dozen (of) eggs, a quarter kilo of cheese and a pot of jam.
- a Medio can be translated in English by *half*, *a half*, *half a*. *Un* and *una* are not used with *medio/a*.

- b De is used with una docena: a dozen when the goods themselves are referred to.
- 22 creo que eso es todo. *I think that's all.*
 Creer means to think as well as to believe (L6, N5b).
- 23 Hágame la cuenta, *Add it up for me (literally make me the bill),*
 Haga is the usted command form of hacer. Remember haga el favor de: please.
- 24 ¡Válgame Dios qué caro! *Good heavens, how expensive!*
- 25 Basta de compras por hoy. *That's enough shopping for today.*
- En la frutería *At the greengrocer's*
- 26 Quiero medio kilo de tomates, pero tienen que ser muy frescos. *I want half a kilo of tomatoes, but they must be very fresh.*
- 27 Se dice que van a subir. *It's said that they're going to go up.*
 Remember se dice que (L6, N32c).
- 28 ¡Qué escándalo! *How shocking (what a scandal)!*
- 29 ¿Siguen las naranjas al mismo precio? *Are the oranges (continuing) at the same price?*
 Siguen is the third person plural form of the present tense of seguir(i) (N2b).
- 30 las naranjas valen todavía once pesetas el kilo. *the oranges still cost (are worth) eleven pesetas a (the) kilo.*
 Valer: to be worth is often used with prices (L5, N24a).
- 31 Menos mal. *Just as well.*
- 32 Hoy quiero un melón de dos kilos más o menos y bastante maduro. *Today I want a melon (of) more or less two kilos and fairly ripe.*
- 33 ¿Peras, manzanas, uvas, melocotones? *Pears, apples, grapes, peaches?*
- 34 ahora recuerdo que necesitamos algunos plátanos. *now I remember that we need some bananas.*
 Recuerdo is the yo form of the present tense of recordar(ue).
- 35 Póngame dos kilos. *Give (put) me two kilos.*
 Ponga is the usted command form of poner: to put (App. 1b).
- 36 ¿No quiere también algunas verduras? *Don't you want some vegetables too?*
- 37 déme un kilo de cebollas, un repollo grande, dos coliflores de tamaño mediano *give me a kilo of onions, a large cabbage, two cauliflowers of medium size*
- 38 y kilo y medio de judías verdes si son tiernas. *and a kilo and a half of green beans if they're tender.*
- 39 porque no me queda dinero. *because I've no money left (no money remains to me).*
- 40 Mañana vuelvo por aquí. *I'll be back this way tomorrow.*

- a Vuelvo is the yo form of the present tense of volver(ue): to return.
- b por aquí: this way (literally through here).
- 41 Como Vd. diga, Petra. *Whatever you say, Petra.*
 Vd. is an abbreviated form of usted; likewise we have Vds. for ustedes.

Part three

Hablando de verduras *Talking about vegetables*

- 42 ¿Te gustan las verduras? *Do you like vegetables?*
 María and Carmen address each other as tú and consequently use te gusta/n and not le gusta/n for do you like.
- 43 Sí, me gustan bastante. *Yes, I quite like them.*
- 44 ¿Qué verduras prefieres? *Which vegetables do you prefer?*
 Prefieres is the tú form of the present tense of preferir(ie) (L4, N5b).
- 45 Yo nunca como patatas. No quiero engordar. *I never eat potatoes. I don't want to get fat.*

En la tienda de comestibles *At the grocer's*

- 46 Perdónese, señora. *Excuse me, madam,*
 Perdónese is a very useful polite expression; it is the usted command form of perdonar: to pardon, forgive.
- 47 Sí, todos los días. *Yes, every day (all the days).*
 Todos los días is similar to todas las tardes (L6, N14a). Notice that the final s is sometimes omitted in speech.
- 48 ¿Cómo lo sabe Vd.? *How do you know (it)?*
 Lo: it is often inserted in Spanish where we would not use it in English. It refers to what is already under discussion or in the speaker's mind.
 Remember lo siento: I'm sorry (I regret it).

Lección ocho Lesson eight

Camino de Sevilla On the way to Seville

What happens

Part one

Marisol is very pleased that the family are at last on their way to Seville in Manuel's car. She is much impressed by Manuel. She complains about the restrictions her parents impose on her. So far she has enjoyed her stay in Madrid but was not impressed with Toledo.

Part two

En el coche de Manuel *In Manuel's car*

As the family have not reserved any hotel accommodation in Seville, Manuel offers to telephone his hotel when they stop for petrol in Córdoba to see what he can arrange.

En la estación de servicio (gasolinera) *At the service station*

Manuel buys petrol and has the oil and tyres checked.

Conferencia con Sevilla *Trunk call to Seville*

Manuel exercises his charm on the receptionist at the Hotel María Luisa and she agrees to see what she can do about the rooms he wants.

De vuelta al coche *Back at the car*

Manuel informs the family that he has found rooms for them.

Part three

En la estación de servicio *At the service station*

Sr. Navarro calls in for petrol and discovers that he has a puncture.

Marta va al cine. *Marta goes to the cinema.*

Marta has enjoyed her visit to the cinema. She slept the whole time.

Las vacaciones del señor Gómez *Mr. Gómez's holidays*

After his fortnight's holiday in Rome with his family, Sr. Gómez complains that he has lost three kilos in weight.

New words in this lesson

el aire air
el camino way, road
el coche car
el depósito tank
el garaje garage
el mecánico mechanic, garage attendant
el neumático tyre
el permiso permission
el pinchazo puncture
el problema problem
el resultado result
el sistema system
el sitio place, room
el surtidor pump
el turismo tourism

la conferencia trunk call
la estación de servicio service station
la feria fair
la gasolina petrol
la gasolinera petrol station
la obra work
la oficina office
la pipa pipe
la restricción restriction
la semana week
la suerte luck
la telefonista telephonist

contento happy
difícil difficult
distruido absent-minded
guapo handsome
horrible horrible
importante important
octavo eighth
ordinario ordinary
sencillo single

Notes

Part one

- Hoy estoy muy contenta. *Today I'm very happy.*
Estar should always be used with *contento* as we are describing a passing emotion.
- Vamos en el coche de Manuel. *We're going in Manuel's car.*

simpático nice, kind
súper super

apagar to put out, extinguish
conseguir(i) to manage, succeed in, get
contar(ue) to count
encontrar(ue) to find
haber to have (auxiliary verb)
insistir to insist
llamar to call
llamar to go
parar to stop
pasarlo bien to enjoy (oneself)
perder(ie) to lose
poner con to put through, connect
querer(ie) to love
resolver(ue) to solve
telefonar to telephone

ellas them

esto this

e and

a casa home(wards)

ahí there

al habla speaking

a propósito by the way

en casa at home

en ferias fair time

esta noche tonight, this evening

pronto quickly

sin duda without doubt

¡maldición! curse (it)!

¡qué cansada estoy! how tired I am!

¡qué suerte! how lucky!

¿qué te parece? what do you think?

diecisiete seventeen

diecinueve nineteen

- 3 ¡Qué suerte poder viajar tanto! *How lucky (what luck) to be able to travel so much!*
 la suerte: *luck* tener suerte: *to be lucky*
- 4 y no necesitar permiso para todo. *and not to need permission for everything.*
- 5 Naturalmente quiero mucho a mis padres. *Naturally I love my parents a lot.*
 Querer(ie) means to love as well as to want. It should not be used simply for *to like*.
- 6 y mi abuela es muy simpática *and my grandmother is very nice*
- 7 pero en casa hay restricciones. *but at home there are restrictions.*
 en casa: *at home*
- 8 tengo que volver a casa a las nueve; *I have to be (return) home at nine;*
 volver(ue) a casa: *to return home* Notice that a casa implies motion homewards while en casa (N7) refers to one actually being at home.
- 9 y no insistir en ser actriz. *and not insist on being an actress.*
- 10 ¡Uff! ¡Qué cansada estoy de todo esto! *Oh! How tired I am of all this!*
 Esto, just like eso: *that*, refers to a whole series of abstract things or something vague (L6, N52).
- 11 Hemos pasado unos días en Madrid. *We've spent a few days in Madrid.*
 a Hemos pasado: *we have spent* So far we have been using the present tense of the Spanish verb. Now we have come to the perfect tense which as you can see refers to events that have already taken place. It is formed by the present tense of *haber*: *to have* (NOT *tener* notice) and the past participle of the other verb concerned, in this case *pasar*: *to spend* (App. 1d).
- b Hemos is the nosotros form of *haber* which is never used for *to have* in the sense of possession. To form the past participle of *ar* verbs you simply replace the *ar* with *ado*.
- 12 Han sido unos días estupendos. *They've been wonderful days.*
 a Han is the third person plural form of *haber*.
- b Sido is the past participle of *ser*. To form the past participle of *er* and *ir* verbs you replace the *er* and *ir* with *ido*.
- 13 Toledo ha sido algo horrible; *Toledo has been rather horrible;*
 Ha is the third person singular form of *haber*.
- 14 ¡He tenido que visitar monumentos! *I've had to go sightseeing!*
 a He is the yo form of *haber*.
- b Tenido is the past participle of *tener*.
- 15 Como son las ferias de abril, *As it's the April fair (as they are the fairs of April),*
 This refers to the traditional celebrations in Seville which follow Easter every year.

- 16 voy a pasarlo muy bien. *I'm going to enjoy it very much.*
 pasarlo bien: *to enjoy (oneself)*

Part two

En el coche de Manuel *In Manuel's car*

- 17 esto es importante. *this is important.*
- 18 Parece que va a ser difícil. *It seems that it's going to be difficult.*
- 19 Podemos parar en Córdoba para comer e ir a un garaje para poner gasolina. *We can stop in Córdoba to eat and to go to a garage to get (put) petrol.*
 a Remember that para is used when to has the sense of *in order to*.
 b Y: *and* changes to e before words beginning with i or hi.
 c Take care with the spelling of garaje.
- 20 Desde allí puedo telefonar a mi hotel en Sevilla. *From there I can telephone (to) my hotel in Seville.*
 You must always use a after telefonar if you mention the person or place you're phoning.
- 21 Estoy casi seguro que encontramos algo. *I'm almost sure that we'll find something.*
 Encontrar(ue) means to find as well as to meet.
- 22 Eso resuelve el problema. *That solves the problem.*
 a resolver(ue): *to solve*
 b Notice that problema is a masculine noun.

En la estación de servicio (gasolinera) *At the service station*

- 23 Mecánico *Mechanic, assistant*
- 24 Ponga diecinueve litros de Súper. *Put (in) nineteen litres of Super.*
- 25 ¿Quiere apagar la pipa, por favor? *Will you put your pipe out, please?*
- 26 Soy muy distraído. *I'm very absent-minded.*
 Ser is used with distraído as Ramón is referring to a general, permanent characteristic.
- 27 El depósito ya está lleno. *The tank is full now.*
- 28 ¿Quiere mirar cómo está el aceite y si necesitan aire los neumáticos? *Will you check the oil (look how is the oil) and if the tyres need air?*
- 29 Por ahora todo marcha bien. *Everything is going well (for) now.*
- 30 A propósito, *By the way,*
- 31 Ahí, en la oficina que está a la derecha de ese surtidor. *There, in the office which is to the right of that pump.*

Conferencia con Sevilla *Trunk call to Seville*

- 32 Oiga, *Listen,*

This is the **usted** command form of **oír**: *to hear* and is often used when making a phone call.

- 33 ¿quiere ponerme con el Hotel María Luisa de Sevilla, por favor? *will you put me through to the María Luisa Hotel in Seville, please?*
poner con: *to put through to* (of telephoning)

34 Telefonista *Telephonist*

35 Ya puede hablar. *Now you can speak.*

36 dígame. *hello (tell me).*

This is the usual expression to use when answering the phone.

37 Manuel Pereda, al habla. *Manuel Pereda speaking.*

Al habla is some more telephone jargon.

38 una doble y dos sencillas, *one double and two singles,*

Una sencilla: *a single room* is an alternative to *una individual* (L2, N25).

39 ¿Qué dices? Sabes que eso es imposible. *What are you saying? You know that's impossible.*

Dices is the **tú** form of the present tense of **decir** (App 4a) of which we have already used the **Vd.** and **Vds.** command forms **diga** and **digan**. Manuel and Pili are obviously friends.

40 Estamos en ferias, ¿sabes? *It's fair time, you know?* (literally *we're in fairs*).

41 Vamos guapa. *Come on, gorgeous.*

guapo: *handsome, beautiful etc.*

42 Cuento con ellas. *I'm counting on them.*

a contar(ue): *to count*

b Ellas refers to *habitaciones* which is of course feminine. When used after a preposition *ellas*: *they* means *them*.

43 ¿Qué te parece si salimos esta noche? *What do you think about our going out tonight?*

a ¿qué te parece?: *how does it seem to you?* or *what's your opinion?*

b esta noche: *tonight*

De vuelta al coche *Back at the car*

44 Ya he encontrado sitio para Vds. *I've found a place for you.*

a Encontrado is the past participle of **encontrar(ue)** (N11a, b).

b para Vds.: *for you* You may have already noticed that subject pronouns like **Vd;** **Vds.**; **ellas**; **nosotros** etc. are also used after prepositions, leading to a different translation in English (**ellas**: *they, them*; **nosotros**: *we, us*) (N42b). In fact all the subject pronouns except **yo** and **tú** can be used in this way; **mi** and **ti** are used instead of **yo** and **tú** (App. 14e).

45 Papá, mamá, ¿habéis oído? *Dad, mum, have you heard?*

a Habéis is the **vosotros** form of **haber**.

b Oído is the past participle of **oír**.

46 para nosotros. *for us.*

Another example of a subject pronoun being used after a preposition (N44b).

47 ¿Cómo ha conseguido eso? *How have you managed that?*

Conseguido is the past participle of **conseguir(i)**: *to manage, succeed in* (N12b).

48 Llamando guapa a la recepcionista del hotel. *(By) calling the hotel receptionist gorgeous.*

Notice that the gerund, **llamando**, is not accompanied by any Spanish word meaning *by*.

49 Parece buen sistema. *It seems a good system.*

Buen indicates that **sistema**, like **problema** (N22b), is masculine.

50 Sin duda da buenos resultados. *Without doubt it gives good results.*

51 ¿has terminado de comer? *have you finished eating?*

De must be used with **terminar** when another verb follows it.

Part three

En la estación de servicio *At the service station*

52 Necesito diecisiete litros. *I need seventeen litres.*

53 ¿Ordinaria o Súper? *Ordinary or Super?*

54 Súper, pero pronto. *Super, but quickly.*

Pronto normally means *soon* but sometimes, as here, *quickly*.

55 ¿Sabe Vd. que ha tenido un pinchazo? *Do you know that you've had a puncture.*

56 ¡Maldición! *Curse (it)!*

Marta va al cine. *Marta goes to the cinema.*

57 Hoy he ido al teatro. *Today I've been (gone) to the theatre.*

Ido is the past participle of **ir**.

58 ¿Te ha gustado la obra? *Did you like the work? (literally: Has the work pleased you?)*

a Gustado is the past participle of **gustar**.

b Obra is used only to refer to works of art, theatre and music.

59 ¿Dónde has estado tú? *Where have you been?*

Estado is the past participle of **estar**.

60 He dormido todo el tiempo. *I (have) slept all the time.*

Dormido is the past participle of **dormir(ue)**.

Las vacaciones del señor Gómez. *Mr. Gómez's holidays*

61 Yo he perdido tres kilos en dos semanas. *I've lost three kilos in two weeks.*

Perdido is the past participle of **perder(ie)**.

62 ¡Ah, el turismo! *Ah, tourism!*

Lección nueve Lesson nine

Sevilla en tiempo de ferias Seville at fair time

What happens

Part one

Manuel, who is a native of Seville, tells us that although he has come to the city at the time of the April fair to work, he intends to enjoy himself to a certain extent as well. We learn that although he gets on very well with girls in general he has no plans for marriage at the moment.

Part two

En Sevilla In Seville

Manuel discusses Seville with doña Julia. She tells him what she has already seen and he gives her some advice on what else she should try to see.

En la feria At the fair

Don Ramón and doña Julia are watching the dancing and listening to the music at the fair.

Marisol se pierde. Marisol gets lost.

Marisol gets lost at the fair and is directed back to her hotel by a policeman who flirts with her in a mild sort of way.

Part three

Fernando el artista Fernando the artist

Julián, learning that Fernando spent three weeks in Seville in April, assumes that he went to the fair. However, Fernando was solely interested in the city's museums.

La señorita Ramírez en la comisaría Miss Ramirez at the police station

Srta. Ramírez seems somewhat confused as she reports that she has lost her handbag. She then adds that she lost it last year.

Rosario no puede cenar con Margarita. Rosario cannot dine with Margarita. Rosario finds it impossible to accept Margarita's invitation to dinner although her parents can go. She has to watch television. Perhaps she is a TV critic!

New words in this lesson

el abanico fan
el artista artist
el barrio district
el collar necklace
el interior inside, interior
el jardín garden
el matrimonio marriage
el muchacho boy, young man
el naranjo orange tree
el olor smell, scent
el pendiente earring
el puesto job
el sevillano Sevillian
el soltero bachelor
el trabajo work, job
el vestido de volantes flounced dress

la acera pavement
la alegría gaiety, happiness
la bocacalle side street, turning
la caseta booth
la castañuela castanet
la comisaría police station
la corrida bullfight
la costa cost
la flor flower
la guitarra guitar
la manzanilla dry sherry
la mitad half
la oreja ear
la orilla bank (of a river)
la parte part
la peineta high comb
la sevillana girl from Seville
"las sevillanas" dance from Seville

auténtico real, authentic
bello beautiful
dispuesto ready, disposed
fácil easy
gracioso cute, graceful
interesante interesting
menor least
natal native

negro black
noveno ninth
pasado last, past
popular popular
precioso pretty
único unique
variado varied

bailar to dance
celebrarse to be held, be celebrated
cenar to dine
divertirse (ie) to enjoy oneself,
have a good time
entrar to enter, go in
entusiasmar to delight
pensar (ie) to think, intend
perderse (ie) to get lost
tener suerte to be lucky
tocar to play (an instrument)

conmigo with me
ellas they
la you
lo it, so
ti you

entre among
hacia towards
hasta as far as

a toda costa at all costs
el año pasado last year
no hay de qué it's a pleasure
por ahora for now, for the time
being
por desgracia unfortunately
por todas partes everywhere
sin falta without fail
todavía still

¿cuándo? when?
¿en qué? how?
¿no? haven't you?

viernes Friday
sábado Saturday

Part one

- 1 mi ciudad natal. *my native city.*
- 2 Los sevillanos decimos que es una ciudad muy bella. *We Sevillians say that it's a very beautiful city.*
- a Los sevillanos decimos Remember the phrase los españoles tomamos vino (L3, N56).
- b Decimos is the nosotros form of the present tense of decir (App. 4a).
- 3 Estos días se celebran las ferias de abril. *These days the April fairs are being held (celebrated).*
celebrarse: to be held, celebrated This is a reflexive verb, the se being a reflexive pronoun which is joined to the infinitive (L7, N13b).
- 4 y hay música y alegría por todas partes. *and there's music and gaiety everywhere.*
por todas partes: everywhere (lit: through all parts)
- 5 Por desgracia, no he venido a Sevilla a divertirme. *Unfortunately, I haven't come to Seville to enjoy myself.*
- a Venido is the past participle of venir: to come (App. 1d).
- b Verbs of motion like venir, ir etc. are followed by a before an infinitive. No he venido a divertirme. (App. 10b).
- c Divertirme is also a reflexive verb (N3). As you can see reflexive verbs may be ar, er or ir verbs. Me, like se, is a reflexive pronoun and is used here because Manuel has used the yo form of venir (he venido). Me in this case can be translated by myself.
- Note the difference; voy a divertirme: I'm going to enjoy myself
va a divertirse: he's going to enjoy himself
she's going to enjoy herself
you're going to enjoy yourself
- 6 He hecho el viaje por razones de trabajo; *I've made the journey for reasons of work;*
- a Hecho is the past participle of hacer: to do, make. As you can see it is irregular in form.
- b por: for (in the sense of because of, on account of). You have already come across both para and por with the meaning for. See Appendix 16 for a list of the differences between these two words.
- 7 pero hay tres cosas que pienso hacer: *but there are three things that I intend to do:*
Pienso is the yo form of the present tense of pensar(ie): to think, intend. Notice that it is followed directly by the infinitive (App. 10a).
- 8 ir a una corrida, (to) go to a bullfight,

- 9 y tomar unas copas de manzanilla. *and have a few glasses of manzanilla.*

Manzanilla is a very dry sherry, coming from Sanlúcar de Barrameda, a little town on the coast some fifteen miles from Jerez.

- 10 Es un puesto muy interesante y variado. *It's a very interesting, varied job.*
- 11 Sus padres y su abuela son muy simpáticos. *His parents and grandmother are very nice.*
- 12 La pequeña Marisol es muy graciosa. *Little Marisol is very cute.*
When you use an adjective with someone's name it is usual to put in the definite article as well.
- 13 ¡Desea ser actriz a toda costa! *She wants to be an actress at all costs!*
- 14 Soy muy popular entre las chicas. *I'm very popular with (among) the girls.*
- 15 Ellas están siempre dispuestas a casarse conmigo. *They're always ready to marry me.*
a The feminine form ellas is used because Manuel is referring to las chicas.
b casarse con: to marry Casarse is another reflexive verb and the sentence could be translated as they're always ready to marry themselves with me.
c conmigo: with me The usual word for me after a preposition is mí. However with con we have this special one word form conmigo.
- 16 Pero...por ahora, el matrimonio no es para mí. *But...for now, marriage is not for me.*
- 17 todavía estoy soltero. *I'm still a bachelor.*
Notice that estar is used with soltero just as it is with casado: married (L6, N7).

Part two

En Sevilla In Seville

- 18 Sí, me entusiasma. *Yes, I love it (literally: it delights me).*
- 19 ¿Qué ha visto Vd. hasta ahora? *What have you seen so far (until now)?*
Visto is the past participle of ver and like hecho (N6a) it is irregular.
- 20 He estado en el barrio de Santa Cruz. *I've been in the Santa Cruz district*
Santa Cruz: Holy Cross is one of the best known districts of Seville.
- 21 y naturalmente he visitado la casa de Murillo. *and naturally I've visited Murillo's house.*
Murillo is a famous Spanish painter of the seventeenth century (1617-1682).
- 22 También he entrado en la catedral. *I've also been into the cathedral.*
Entrado is the past participle of entrar: to enter, go in. Whenever you mention the place that is entered you must put en after entrar.

- 23 pero todavía no he subido a la Giralda. *but I still haven't been up to the Giralda.*
 a Subido is the past participle of subir: *to go up, climb.*
 b La Giralda is a Moorish tower in the cathedral at Seville. During Moorish times in Seville (712-1248) it was a minaret.
- 24 Debe hacerlo. *You must do so.*
 Lo: it can sometimes be translated as *so*.
- 25 También tiene que visitar el Alcázar. *You must also visit the Alcázar.*
 El Alcázar: *the fortress* is one of the finest Moorish buildings in Spain.
- 26 El interior es magnífico, pero yo prefiero los jardines. *The inside is magnificent but I prefer the gardens.*
 Notice that the plural of *el jardín*: *the garden* does not need an accent.
- 27 El olor de los naranjos y de las flores en ellos es único. *The scent of the orange trees and the flowers in them is unique.*
- 28 el viernes sin falta *on Friday without fail*
- 29 Todos dicen *They all say*
 Dicen is the third person plural form of the present tense of *decir* (App. 4a).
- 30 El sábado pueden venir conmigo al barrio de Triana. *On Saturday you can come with me to (the district of) Triana.*
 a You have now come across the names of all the days of the week (App. 20a).
 b Triana is undoubtedly the most famous district of Seville.
- 31 Está en la otra orilla del río Guadalquivir. *It's on the other bank of the river Guadalquivir.*
 The Guadalquivir flows through Seville to reach the sea west of Cádiz.

En la feria *At the fair*

- 32 Marisol parece una sevillana auténtica, ¿verdad? *Marisol looks a real Sevillian girl, doesn't she?*
- 33 el vestido de volantes, la peineta, los pendientes, el collar y la flor en la oreja. *the flounced dress, the high comb, the earrings, the necklace and the flower over her ear.*
 a El vestido de volantes is the typical feria dress with a long skirt with frills and frills around the sleeves. They are usually spotted and people often think of them as typically Spanish dress.
 b La peineta is the high comb worn at the back of the head over which the lace veil (*mantilla*) is placed.
 c la oreja: *the ear* Remember that it is customary to use the definite article with parts of the body and clothes rather than possessives like *mi*, *su* etc. (L3, N40c).

- 34 Hemos tenido suerte de poder visitar una caseta. *We've been lucky to be able to visit a booth.*
 a Tener suerte: *to be lucky*
 b Una caseta: *a booth* These are specially set up for the fair in various parts of Seville and become centres of social life for the duration of the fair.
- 35 ¡Mira cómo bailan "sevillanas" esas niñas! *Look how those girls are dancing "sevillanas"!*
 a Mira is the *tú* command form of *mirar*. To form the *tú* command of an *ar* verb you simply remove the final *s* of the *tú* form of the present tense; e.g.
miras: *you're looking* — ¡mira!: *look!*
bailas: *you're dancing* — ¡baila!: *dance!*
 b Sevillana, apart from referring to a female native of Seville, is a typical dance of the flamenco type.
- 36 También saben tocar las castañuelas; *They can also play the castanets;*
 a When *can* has the sense of *know how to* Spaniards use *saber* and not *poder*.
 b Tocar is used for *to play* when referring to musical instruments. Jugar is reserved for games and sports (L6, N22).
- 37 y ese muchacho cerca de ti toca muy bien la guitarra. *and that boy near you plays the guitar very well.*
- 38 Ha ido a comprar un abanico y otras cosas. *She's gone to buy a fan and other things.*

Marisol se pierde. *Marisol gets lost.*

- 39 ¿puede decirme dónde estoy? *can you tell me where I am?*
- 40 Creo que me he perdido. *I think that I'm lost (I've got lost).*
 Perderse (ie) is another reflexive verb meaning *to get lost* (lit: *to lose oneself*). So far you have only met reflexive verbs in the infinitive (N3, 5c, 15b). Here you can see that when a reflexive verb is used in a tense the reflexive pronoun comes before the verb.
 Me he perdido: *I've got lost* ; Marisol se pierde: *Marisol gets lost.*
- 41 Guardia *Policeman*
- 42 No tengo la menor idea. *I haven't the least idea.*
- 43 Eso es fácil. *That's easy.*
- 44 Vaya hasta el final de esa calle y tome la última bocacalle de la derecha. *Go as far as the end of that street and take the last turning to the right.*
 a Vaya is the *usted* command form of *ir* (App. 4h).
 b la bocacalle: *side street, turning*
- 45 El hotel está hacia la mitad de la calle, en la acera de la izquierda. *The hotel is towards the middle of the street, on the pavement on the left hand side.*

- 46 señor guardia. *officer.*
It is polite to use *señor* with the word for someone's occupation. We had *señor revisor* in Lesson 5 for instance.
- 47 No hay de qué, preciosa. *It's a pleasure, beautiful.*
No hay de qué is a stock reply to *gracias* similar to *de nada* (L1, N29).

Part three

Fernando el artista *Fernando the artist*

- 48 ¿Cuándo has vuelto? *When did you get back (have you returned)?*
Vuelto is the past participle of *volver(ue)*. Like *hecho* and *visto* it is irregular.
- 49 He vuelto el viernes pasado. *I (have) returned last Friday.*
Pasado following a day or a month means last. Notice that you must use *el* with the day or month.

La señorita Ramírez en la comisaría *Miss Ramirez at the police station*

- 50 ¿En qué puedo servirla, señorita? *How (in what) can I help (serve) you, miss?*
La means *you* as the object of a verb when referring to one female person whom you would address as *usted*.
- 51 ¿Puede decirme cómo es el bolso? *Can you tell me what the bag is like?*
¿cómo es...?: what is (it) like?
- 52 es grande y negro. *it's large and black.*
- 53 el año pasado. *last year.*

Rosario no puede cenar con Margarita. *Rosario cannot dine with Margarita.*

- 54 ¿Podéis venir a cenar esta noche? *Can you come to dinner this evening?*
cenar: to dine, have dinner

Lección diez Lesson ten

Luis telefona a Sevilla. Luis telephones Seville.

What happens

Part one

Luis is waiting for an underground train at Argüelles station in Madrid. He is planning to fly to Seville to see his family as he has two days holiday. Everyone waiting for the train looks very serious save a pretty blonde girl who, unfortunately, is accompanied by her boy friend.

Part two

Luis llama a Información. *Luis calls Enquiries.*

Luis asks the operator what he must do to make a call to Seville.

Al habla con el Hotel María Luisa. *Speaking to the María Luisa Hotel.*

When Luis telephones the hotel he learns that his father is out. He leaves a message asking his father to ring back after eleven.

Don Ramón llama a Luis. *D. Ramón calls Luis.*

D. Ramón rings back and, after offering some fatherly advice concerning Luis' studies, arranges to meet the plane at Seville airport the following day.

Part three

El señor Navarro otra vez. *Mr. Navarro again*

Sr. Navarro mixes up the numbers, when he makes a phone call and instead of speaking to Sr. Díez in Madrid finds himself talking to Sr. Díaz in Barcelona.

El señor Guerra, el gran filósofo. *Mr. Guerra, the great philosopher*

Sr. Guerra is not much help when it comes to knowing when Pepe and his mother are coming. He admits that, like Socrates, he only knows that he knows nothing.

Marina y Ángeles hablan de libros. *Marina and Ángeles talk about books.*

Ángeles is not at all interested in reading the works of Cervantes (1547-1616), who wrote *Don Quixote*, nor of the great dramatist Lope de Vega (1562-1635). She only likes romantic books.

10 New words in this lesson

el abrazo hug, embrace
el beso kiss
el curso academic year
el diente tooth
el doctor doctor
el esfuerzo effort
el examen examination
el filósofo philosopher
el idiota idiot
el metro underground
el novio fiancé, boy friend
el ojo eye
el pelo hair
el recado message
el registro register
el trimestre term

la asignatura subject
la bondad goodness
la cara face
la fiesta holiday
la figura figure
la información enquiries
la llamada call
la patrona landlady
la respuesta answer
la voz voice

castaño brown
corto short
décimo tenth
gran/de great
parcial terminal (of exams)
perfecto perfect
romántico romantic
rubio blond
serio serious
su her
universitario university

aprobar(ue) to pass an exam
dejar to leave
dudar to doubt
durar to last
marcar to dial
observar to watch, observe
sacar bien to succeed, do well
sonreír(i) to smile
temer to fear

él him
ella her
vosotros you

excepto except

así que so that
mientras while
puesto que as, since
ya que as, since

a continuación next, then
así so
cuando when
entonces then
primero firstly
pues well, then
quizás perhaps

nada más nothing else
¡seguro que sí! of course!

cero nought, zero
setecientos seven hundred
veintiuno twenty-one
veintitrés twenty-three

junio June

Notes

Part one

- 1 Estoy en la estación de metro de Argüelles I'm at Argüelles underground station

- 2 esperando que llegue mi tren. waiting for my train to arrive (lit: waiting that my train arrives).

- a You might be surprised to see the form **llegue** and not **llega**. **Llegue** is the third person singular form of the present subjunctive tense which is used in certain specific circumstances. In this case it is used after the verb **esperar**: to wait for. It conveys a sense of uncertainty or doubt in the future. After all the train may not arrive!

- b To form the present subjunctive of regular **ar** verbs, remove the ending of the **yo** form present tense and replace it by **e; es; e; emos;éis; en**. Hence **llego** becomes **llegue** (App. 1(1)). The **u** in **llegue** is to indicate that the **g** sound remains unaltered and is not pronounced; if it were, there would be two dots over the **u** as in **Argüelles**.

- 3 Hoy no voy a la ciudad universitaria. Today I'm not going to the University city.

- 4 Es posible que mañana vaya a Sevilla; It's possible that I'll go to Seville tomorrow;

- Vaya is the **yo** form of the present subjunctive of **ir** (App. 4h). In this case the subjunctive is used after an expression of possibility or uncertainty.

- 5 ya que tenemos dos días de vacaciones, as we have two days (of) holiday.

- 6 quisiera visitar a mi familia. I'd like to visit my family.

- Notice that the personal **a** is used with **familia**.

- 7 Dudo que haya billete para el tren. I doubt if (that) there are tickets for the train.

- a In English we are inclined to say *I doubt if* or *I doubt whether* but the Spaniard will say **dudo que**: *I doubt that*.

- b Haya is the subjunctive form of **hay** and is also the third person singular form of the present subjunctive of **haber** (App. 4h).

- c The subjunctive is used here following an expression of doubt or uncertainty.

- 8 así que quizás vaya en avión. so that perhaps I'll go by air (plane). The subjunctive **vaya** is used because it follows **quizás**: *perhaps*, another expression of uncertainty (N4, 7c).

- 9 El viaje en avión es muy corto; The journey by air is very short; no creo que dure una hora. I don't think it will take (last) an hour.

- 10 Dure is the third person singular form of the present subjunctive of **durar**: to last. Here the reason for the subjunctive is that it follows a verb of thinking or believing used negatively, which has the same effect as a verb of doubting (N7c).

- 11 Mientras espero en el andén, observo a las personas cerca de mí. While I'm waiting on the platform, I observe the people near me.

- Note the personal *a* before *las* personas.
- 12 ¡Qué caras más serias tienen todos! *What serious faces they all have!*
In exclamations involving *qué*, a noun and an adjective it is customary to insert *más* or *tan* between the noun and adjective.
- 13 Sólo una persona sonríe: *Only one person is smiling:*
Sonríe is the third person singular of the present tense of *sonreír*(i): *to smile* (App. 2c).
- 14 es una chica rubia y muy guapa. *it's a very beautiful blonde (girl).*
- 15 Tiene el pelo largo y los ojos castaños. *She has long hair and brown eyes.*
a Notice that in such descriptions the definite article is used in Spanish with parts of the body.
- b Castaño is one of several Spanish words for *brown*. It is a deep, chestnut colour.
- 16 No es muy alta, pero tiene buena figura. *She isn't very tall, but has a good figure.*
- 17 enseña unos dientes perfectos; *she reveals (shows) perfect teeth;*
- 18 con ella está su novio. *with her is her boy friend.*
Su can mean *her* as well as *his, its, your, their.*

Part two

Luis llama a Información. *Luis calls Enquiries.*

- 19 quisiera hacer una llamada a Sevilla. *I'd like to make a call to Seville.*
- 20 Marque primero el número 91 y a continuación el número que ha dicho.
Dial first (the) number 91 and then the number you've said.
a Marque is the Vd. command form of *marcar*: *to dial*. It is also the third person singular form of the subjunctive. The Vd. and Vds command forms of all verbs are in fact present subjunctives.
- b Dicho is the past participle of *decir*.
- Al habla con el Hotel María Luisa. *Speaking to the María Luisa Hotel.*
- 21 quisiera hablar con el doctor Muñoz. *I'd like to talk to Dr. Muñoz.*
Doctor is used, and not *médico*, when you use the doctor's name or speak to him.
- 22 Tenga la bondad de esperar un momento. *Have the goodness to wait a moment.*
Tenga la bondad de followed by an infinitive is another polite way of saying *please*, similar to *haga el favor de*. Tenga is the Vd. command form of *tener* and thus a subjunctive (N20a).
- 23 Voy a mirar en el registro. *I'm going to look in the register.*
- 24 Es la habitación Nº 700 pero no hay respuesta. *It's room no. 700 but there's no reply.*

Listen carefully and note that 700 is *setecientos*.

- 25 ¿Quiere Vd. dejar algún recado? *Do you want to leave any message?*
- 26 Quisiera hablar con él esta noche después de las once. *I'd like to speak to him tonight after eleven.*
a After a preposition *él* means *him* (L8, N44b).
- b Después must be followed by *de* if you wish to use a noun or infinitive with it. Used alone *después* has the sense of *afterwards*.
- 27 Nada más. *Nothing else.*

D. Ramón llama a Luis. *D. Ramón calls Luis.*

- 28 Patrona *Landlady*
- 29 ¿Es el 243-77-16? *Is that 243-77-16?*
Notice how to give a telephone number in Spanish.
- 30 Así es. *That's correct (So it is).*
- 31 Soy su padre desde Sevilla. *It's his father from Seville.*
In Spanish you have to say *soy su padre*: *I'm his father*. Likewise *somos* *his/her/its/our children* (*we're his/her/its/our children*).
- 32 Papá, ¿qué hay? ¿qué dices? *Dad, how are things? What's the news?*
¿Qué dices? literally means *what are you saying?*, *dices* being the tú form of the present tense of *decir* (App. 4a).
- 33 ¿Cómo va el trimestre? *How's the term going?*
- 34 He aprobado todos los exámenes parciales, excepto una asignatura. *I've passed all the terminal examinations, except (in) one subject.*
a Aprobado is the past participle of *aprobar*(ue): *to pass* (of exams).
- b Asignatura refers to academic subjects.
- 35 Pues tienes que hacer un esfuerzo desde ahora hasta junio para sacar bien el curso. *Well you must make an effort from now until June in order to succeed.*
sacar bien el curso: *to succeed, do well* (academically)
- 36 ¡Seguro que sí! Lo digo yo. *Of course! I promise (I say so).*
Digo is the yo form of the present tense of *decir* (App. 4a).
- 37 Mañana voy a Sevilla a pasar dos días con vosotros. *Tomorrow I'm coming to Seville to spend two days with you.*
You will find that in Spanish the verb *to go*: *ir* is sometimes used when we would say *to come* in English, and vice-versa.
- 38 puesto que el lunes es fiesta. *as Monday is a holiday.*
fiesta: *one day holiday*
- 39 Espero que vengas por la mañana. *I hope that you'll come in the morning.*
a Vengas is the tú form of the present subjunctive of *venir*, used here after *esperar* which in this sentence means *to hope* (N2a). Verbs of emotion cause a following verb to be in the subjunctive.

- b To form the present subjunctive of *er* and *ir* verbs you remove the endings of the present tense and replace them with *a*; *as*; *a*; *amos*; *áis*; *an*. Hence we have *venga*, *vengas* etc.; *tenga*, *tengas*, etc. (App. 11).
- c por la mañana: *in the morning* (L7, N8c)
- 40 Un abrazo. *An embrace, hug.*
- 41 Muchos besos a todos. *Many kisses to everyone.*
These remarks may sound strange to English ears but are quite normal and commonplace in Spain where the family is concerned.

Part three

El señor Navarro otra vez. *Mr. Navarro again*

- 42 Voz *voice*
43 ¡idiota! *idiot!*

El señor Guerra, el gran filósofo. *Mr. Guerra, the great philosopher*

- 44 el gran filósofo. *Grande* becomes *gran* before any singular noun, masculine or feminine. Before a noun *grande* usually indicates the quality of greatness but after a noun it normally refers to size.
- 45 No creo que tarde. *I don't think he'll be long.*
Tarde is the third person singular form of the present subjunctive of *tardar*: *to take time, be long*, used here after *no creo que* (N10).

Marina y Ángeles hablan de libros. *Marina and Ángeles talk about books.*

- 46 No, temo que sea aburrido. *No, I'm afraid that it would be boring.*
Sea is the third person singular of the present subjunctive of *ser* (App. 4h), used here after *temer*: *to be afraid, fear*, a verb of emotion (N39a).
- 47 ¡Sólo me gustan los libros románticos! *I only like romantic books!*

1 Lección once Lesson eleven

A los toros To the bulls

What happens

Part one

Doña Cristina is very much looking forward to the bullfight on the following day, for which Manuel is going to obtain tickets. Luis and Marisol will accompany her. She talks about the magnificent climate that Seville enjoys.

Part two

Al empezar la corrida. *At the start of the bullfight*

Doña Cristina and Luis explain the scene to Marisol as the parade of those who will be taking part in the bullfight makes its way across the arena.

Durante la corrida. *During the bullfight*

All three discuss the merits of the bullfighters taking part.

Después de la corrida. *After the bullfight*

They meet Manuel at a nearby bar for a drink when the bullfight is over.

Part three

Vacaciones intelectuales. *Intellectual holidays*

Talking about their respective holiday plans Teresa tells Emilia that they will probably go to England. However as Emilia's husband wants her to practice her English they will probably go to the Costa Brava!

La primavera de Juan. *Juan's spring*

Juan informs Rodrigo that he will be going to his home town of Santiago de Compostela in April because he likes rain. Santiago is in Galicia in North West Spain and was a very popular place of pilgrimage in the Middle Ages to the supposed burial place of the apostle St. James, the patron saint of Spain. Galicia is notable for its damp climate, its dialect of Spanish, which is very akin to Portuguese, and its bagpipes.

Ángel preparado para ir de viaje. *Ángel ready to go on a journey*

Ángel hasn't got his money, tickets or cases but does have a book to read on the journey.

New words in this lesson

el alguacil bailiff
el caballo horse
el calor heat
el capote de paseo ceremonial cape
el cascabel small bell
el cortejo procession (bullfights)
el éxito success
el inglés English language
el matador matador, bullfighter
el miedo fear

el nieto grandson
los nietos grandchildren
el otoño autumn
el paseo parade
el peón footman
el picador picador
el pie foot
el presidente president
el torero bullfighter
el toril bull pen

el toro bull
el traje suit, costume
el triunfo triumph
el verano summer

la barrera barrier
la cabeza head
la entrada ticket
la faena task
la fila line, row
Inglaterra England
la lluvia rain
la mula mule
la música music
la naranjada orangeade
la niebla fog
la plaza ring
la primavera spring
la tontería nonsense
la verónica a pass with the cape

acostumbrado used to,
accustomed to
adornado adorned
demasiado too much
divertido amusing, entertaining
espléndido splendid
famoso famous
intelectual intellectual
mejor better, best
moreno dark
normal normal
ordenado drawn up
peor worse, worst
preparado ready
probable probable
solo single
tonto silly
undécimo eleventh
abrir to open
atravesar(ie) to cross, go across

buscar to fetch
cambiar to change
celebrar to celebrate
comenzar(ie) to start
llevar to wear
nevar(ie) to snow
pensar(ie) en to think about
recoger to catch, pick up
saludar to greet
sonar(ue) to sound
tener éxito to succeed
tener miedo to be afraid
tirar to throw

ellos them
la it (fem.)
las them (fem.)
lo it (masc.)
los them (masc.)
mucho a lot
nos us, to us, for us
os you, to you

durante during
u or
después afterwards
detrás behind

enero January
febrero February
marzo March
julio July
agosto August
septiembre September
octubre October
noviembre November
diciembre December

a caballo on horseback
a pie on foot
claro of course

Notes

Part one

- 1 Quiero que mis nietos vengan conmigo. *I want my grandchildren to come with me (lit: I want that my grandchildren come with me).*

- a Vengan is the third person plural form of the present subjunctive of venir. The reason for the subjunctive here is that it follows the verb querer: *to want*. When one person wants another to do something the second verb is always in the subjunctive. Note the difference between quiero venir: *I want to come* and quiero que vengan: *I want them to come*.
- b Los nietos: *grandchildren*; el nieto: *grandson*; la nieta: *granddaughter*
- 2 Manuel va a sacarnos entradas de barrera. *Manuel is going to get us front row tickets.*
- a nos: *us, for us*
- b Entradas de barrera would be excellent tickets to have. La barrera is the wooden fence or barrier surrounding the bullring and so they will be sitting in the front row. Una entrada is a ticket for any kind of entertainment from football to a concert.
- 3 ¡Qué muchacho tan simpático! *What a nice boy!*
Remember qué + noun + tan (or más) + adjective (L10, N12).
- 4 Piensa en todo, y lo consigue todo. *He thinks of everything, and manages everything.*
- a Pensar en means *to think of*, except when you are expressing an opinion.
- b Lo: *it* cannot really be translated here.
- 5 Los sevillanos entienden mucho de toros; *The Sevillians understand a lot about bulls*;
- 6 así, es probable que tengamos buena tarde, so, we'll probably have (*it's probable that we'll have*) a good evening,
Tengamos is the nosotros form of the present subjunctive of tener (App. 4h) and is used here after *es probable que* which is an expression of uncertainty (L10, N4).
- 7 y los matadores tengan éxito. *and the bullfighters will be successful.*
Again we have the subjunctive form *tengan* following *es probable que*.
- b Tener éxito: *to have success* is another of the Spanish phrases using tener + noun where we use *to be* + adjective in English.
- 8 En Sevilla hace un tiempo espléndido. *In Seville the weather is splendid.*
- 9 No ha llovido un solo día. *It hasn't rained a single day.*
Llovido is the past participle of llover(ue): *to rain*.
- 10 Es normal que haga buen tiempo. *It's normal for the weather to be fine*
Haga is the third person singular of the present subjunctive of hacer. The subjunctive is used after *es normal que*.
- 11 No hay nieblas en noviembre; *There are no fog(s) in November*;
hay niebla: *it's foggy*
- 12 nunca nieva en diciembre o enero. *it never snows in December or January.*
- 13 Febrero y marzo son meses de primavera. *February and March are spring months.*

- 14 Pero no recomiendo Sevilla en julio o agosto. *But I don't recommend Seville in July or August.*
- 15 ¡Hace tanto calor en el verano! *It's so hot in the summer!*
Hace calor: *it's hot* is another weather expression involving *hacer* just like *hace sol*, *hace frío* etc. Just as you must use *mucho* and not *may* for *very* when *hace* is accompanied by a noun (L5, N54) so here we must use *tanto*: *so much* with *calor*: *heat* and not *tan*: *so*.
- 16 Vengan en septiembre u octubre: *Come in September or October.*
- 17 es el otoño perfecto. *it's the perfect autumn.*

Part two

Al empezar la corrida *At the start of the bullfight*

- 18 Al empezar la corrida *On the bullfight starting*
Al + the infinitive in Spanish is equivalent to the English *on doing something*.
- 19 Mira, abuelita, ya comienza el paseo. *Look, grandma, the parade is already starting.*
Comenzar(ie): *to start* is an alternative to *empezar*.
- 20 Se llama así, ¿no? *That's what it's called (it's called thus), isn't it?*
- 21 El cortejo siempre está ordenado en tres filas. *The procession is always drawn up in three lines.*
Ordenado is the past participle of *ordenar*. When you use a past participle with *estar* you are describing a state which is the result of an action and not the action itself. Here *doña Cristina* is not talking about what happens when the lines are being drawn up but what it looks like when they are in line i.e. the result of the action.
- 22 En cabeza, a caballo, vienen los dos alguaciles. *At (the) head, on horseback, come the two bailiffs.*
a caballo: *on horseback*; un caballo: *a horse*
- 23 Los trajes que llevan son del tiempo de Felipe IV. *The costumes that they're wearing date from the time of Philip (the) Fourth*
a Llevar means *to wear* as well as *to carry*.
- b Notice that in Spanish one says *Felipe Cuarto* not *el Cuarto*. *Philip IV* was king of Spain from 1621 until 1665.
- 24 ¿Os gustan? *Do you like them?*
Luis is talking to two members of his family, and thus addresses them by *vosotros*. Hence the correct form with *gustar* is *os gusta/n*.
- 25 Los hombres que vienen detrás, a pie, son los matadores, peones y picadores. *The men who come behind, on foot, are the bullfighters, footmen and picadors.*
a a pie: *on foot* (N22).

- b los matadores, peones y picadores *The matador is, of course, the star of the bullfight. He is assisted in the early stages by his team of footmen while the task of the picador, who is mounted, is to goad the bull with his lance and weaken the animal's neck muscles.*
- 26 Después vienen las mulas adornadas con cascabeles. *Last (after) come the mules adorned with bells.*
- 27 Y ahora todo el cortejo atraviesa la plaza para saludar al presidente. *And now the whole procession is crossing the ring to salute the president.*
a Todo can sometimes be translated as *whole*.
- b El presidente is the man in charge of a bullfight with the authority to honour the bullfighters or fine them for bad performances.
- 28 los toreros van a cambiar el capote de paseo por el de faena. *the bullfighters are going to change their ceremonial cape for their working one.*
a Torero is the general word for *bullfighter*.
- b el capote de paseo: *the ceremonial cape (the cape of parade):*
- c el de faena: *the working one* *Faena* means *task*. Notice that *el de* is equivalent to *the one*.
- d Por is used for *for* when the sense is *in exchange for* (App. 16b).
- 29 El primero van a dejarlo en una barrera donde haya alguna bella señorita. *The first (one) they're going to leave (it) on a barrier where there's some beautiful young lady.*
a El primero: *the first one* Again no Spanish word for *one* is used.
- b van a dejarlo: *they're going to leave it* *Lo* refers to *el capote* which is, of course, masculine. Hence we can say that *lo* means *it* when referring to masculine nouns as well as to something vague and unspecified (L7, N48). *Lo* is a direct object pronoun (App. 14b).
- c Haya, the subjunctive form, is used here after what is known as an indefinite antecedent (*una barrera donde*). We are not referring to a particular barrier but any one where there happens to be a pretty girl (App. 9f).
- 30 El presidente tira la llave del toril a los alguaciles. *The president is throwing the key of the bull pen to the bailiffs.*
- 31 Uno de ellos la recoge y abre la puerta. *One of them catches it and opens the gate.*
a La: *it* This time it refers to a feminine word *la llave* and so the feminine form *la* is used (N29b) (App. 14b).
- b You will notice that *la*, although an object and not a subject pronoun like *yo*, *ella* etc., comes before the verb. This is always the case except where the verb is an infinitive (e.g. *van a dejarlo*), a gerund (e.g. *está esperándome*) or a command form (e.g. *mírala*). You have already come across this in phrases like *lo siento*, *me gusta* etc. (App. 14b).
- 32 Suena la música y sale el primer toro. *The music sounds and the first bull comes out.*

Like bueno and malo, primero drops the o when it comes before a masculine singular noun.

Durante la corrida *During the bullfight*

- 33 ¡Qué divertido! Lo estoy pasando muy bien. *How entertaining! I'm enjoying it very much.*
Instead of lo estoy pasando Marisol might have said estoy pasándolo. When a gerund or an infinitive follows another verb you may put object pronouns either before the first verb or attached to the end of the gerund or infinitive (N31b) (App. 14b).
- 34 Me gusta aquel torero alto y moreno. Es muy guapo. *I like that tall, dark bullfighter. He's very handsome.*
- 35 Eres tonta y no entiendes nada de toros. *You're silly and don't understand anything about bulls.*
Remember that you must put no before the verb and nada after it to say not anything or nothing.
- 36 Es el peor. *He's the worst.* Peor means worse and worst.
- 37 Se llama el Valenciano. *He's called el Valenciano.*
Our bullfighters are all fictitious characters. Un valenciano is a native of Valencia. Many bullfighters take such names including the world famous el Cordobés. Un cordobés comes from Córdoba.
- 38 Yo prefiero al Granadino. *I prefer el Granadino.*
El Granadino would be from Granada.
- 39 Se ve que no tiene miedo. *It can be seen that he isn't afraid.*
Tener miedo, literally to have fear, is another of the expressions involving tener and a noun.
- 40 El mejor es Jesús Domínguez, famoso por sus verónicas. *The best (one) is Jesús Domínguez, famous for his verónicas.*
a Mejor can mean better and best.
b Jesús is a very common name in Spain.
c Notice famoso por: famous for.
- 41 ¿Cuántos toros quedan todavía? *How many bulls are still left?*
Remember quedar: to be left (L7, N39).
- 42 ¿Viene Manuel a buscarnos después de la corrida? *Is Manuel coming to fetch us after the bullfight?*
a Buscar: to fetch as well as to look for.
b Nos: us is attached to the end of the infinitive buscar (N33).
- 43 Sí. Nos espera en un bar cerca de aquí. *Yes, he's waiting for us in a bar near here.*
Nos here is placed before the verb (N31b, 33).
- 44 Quiere que vayamos a tomar unas copas con él. *He wants us to go and have a few drinks with him.*

Quiere que vayamos: *He wants us to go* (N1a).

Después de la corrida *After the bullfight*

- 45 ¿Qué tal ha ido la corrida? *How did the bullfight go?*
This is a colloquial way of asking what the bullfight was like.
- 46 Lo hemos pasado muy bien. *We (have) enjoyed it very much.*
In the perfect tense object pronouns are placed before haber.
- 47 Voy a tomar una copita de licor Cuarenta y Tres para celebrar el triunfo del Granadino. *I'm going to have a glass of (the) liqueur Forty-three to celebrate the triumph of el Granadino.*
- 48 ¡Tonterías! Para ella una naranjada. *Nonsense! An orangeade for her.*
- 49 No está acostumbrada a beber. *She's not used (accustomed) to drinking.*
Estar acostumbrado: to be used to, accustomed to takes a before a following infinitive. Notice that the feminine form acostumbrada is used as Marisol is being spoken about.

Part three

Vacaciones intelectuales *Intellectual holidays*

- 50 Es probable que nosotros las pasemos en Inglaterra. *We'll probably spend them in England.*
a Remember that you need the subjunctive after es probable que (N6).
b Las: them refers to las vacaciones, hence the feminine form.
- 51 Nosotros quizá vayamos a la Costa Brava. *We perhaps will go to the Costa Brava.*
Quizá is a shortened form of quizás and, like it, is followed by the subjunctive (L10, N8).
- 52 Hay demasiados turistas. *There are too many tourists.*

La primavera de Juan *Juan's spring*

- 53 Eres de Galicia, ¿no? *You're from Galicia, aren't you?*
¿No? in this case means aren't you? In Lesson 9 it was translated by haven't you? It is similar in use to ¿verdad? (L2, N39b) and so can be translated in many different ways.
- 54 En Santiago llueve todos los días. *In Santiago it rains every day.*
Llueve: it rains from llover(ue): to rain.
- 55 Me gusta la lluvia. *I like (the) rain.*

Ángel preparado para ir de viaje *Ángel ready to go on a journey*

- 56 ir de viaje: to go on a journey, trip This is similar to ir de vacaciones.
- 57 No, no lo tengo. *No, I haven't got it.*

New words in this lesson

el apartamento apartment,
flat
el cabello hair
el club club
el cuarto room
el director manager
los entremeses hors d'oeuvres
el equipo team
el frío cold
el huésped guest
el ingeniero engineer
el lugar place
el miembro member
el par pair
el pastor shepherd
el perro dog
el plan plan
los preparativos preparations
el salón lounge, living room
el socio member (of a club)
el subdirector assistant manager
el sueco Swedish (language)
el tenis tennis
el vuelo flight

las afueras outskirts
la cocinera cook
la comida food
la comunicación communication
la costa coast, beach
la dificultad difficulty
la excursión trip, excursion
la fábrica factory
la fecha date
la lógica logic
la merluza hake
la palabra word
la playa beach
la secretaria secretary
Suecia Sweden

o la vasca Basque style

azul blue
cambiado changed
canino canine
directo direct
duodécimo twelfth
enfermo ill, sick
excelente excellent
hecha y derecha really grown up
industrial industrial
plegable folding
puro pure
querido dear
textil textile
tumbado stretched out, lying
vacante empty
vasco Basque

alquilar to rent
avisar to inform, let know
conocer to meet
disfrutar con to enjoy
escribir to write
imaginar to imagine
instalar to put, install
nadar to swim
recibir to receive
reconocer to recognize

la her, it
le him, to him, to her
les them, to them
lo demás the rest
os you

aparte de apart from
como like, as

con tiempo in time
definitivamente definitely
todo lo demás everything else

mil novecientos setenta y tres 1973

Lo refers to el dinero and so we have the masculine word for it. (N29b).
Notice that in negative statements no comes before the object pronouns.
58 No, no los tengo. No, I haven't got them.
Los refers to los billetes and so we must use the masculine word for them (N50b).

Lección doce

Lesson twelve

En Barcelona con los Romero

In Barcelona with the Romeros

What happens

Part one

We now meet don Felipe Romero, the brother of doña Julia, who is an assistant manager at a textiles factory in Barcelona where he lives with his wife and son. He tells us a little about himself and his wife, doña María.

Part two

Carta desde Sevilla A letter from Seville

Don Felipe reads out a letter that they have received from don Ramón and doña Julia telling them about their holiday in Andalusia. They will soon be coming to stay with the Romeros in Barcelona.

Preparativos para la llegada de los Muñoz Preparations for the arrival of the Muñoz family

Don Felipe, doña María and Diego discuss the forthcoming stay of their relations, and in particular the problem of the sleeping arrangements.

Part three

La lógica de Pablo Pablo's logic

Pablo has decided to stay in bed tomorrow instead of going to University, not because he is ill, but because he has exams and the weather will be cold.

Dificultades de comunicación Communication difficulties

Paco has the problem of not being able to communicate with the girl he has fallen for. She lives in Sweden and he doesn't know a word of Swedish.

Los planes de don Federico Don Federico's plans

D. Federico dictates a somewhat jocular letter to his friends whom he is going to see on Sunday. He doesn't want to see his friend at the station but hopes to see his friend's wife there.

Part one

- 1 Mi casa está en Pedralbes, en las afueras de la ciudad. *My house is in Pedralbes on the outskirts of the city.*
- 2 Soy ingeniero industrial. *I'm an industrial engineer.*
- 3 Trabajo como subdirector, en una fábrica textil. *I work as assistant manager in a textiles factory.*
- 4 Espero que un día seré director. *I hope that one day I'll be manager.*
Ser is the *yo* form of the future tense of *ser* (App. 1e). It is very easy to form the future tense of any verb. All you do is add the endings é; ás; á; emos; éis; án to the infinitive, whether it be an *ar*, *er* or *ir* verb. Notice that all the endings have an accent except *emos* (App. 1e).
- 5 No tengo muchos intereses aparte de mi trabajo. *I haven't got many interests apart from my work.*
- 6 excepto la buena comida y el buen fútbol. *except for good food and good football.*
The definite articles *el* and *la* are used here as *D*. Felipe is generalising.
- 7 Soy socio del club de fútbol Barcelona. *I'm a member of Barcelona football club.*
- 8 y todos los domingos veo jugar a este equipo. *and every Sunday (all the Sundays) I see this team play(ing).*
- a Veo is the *yo* form of the present tense of *ver*: *to see* (App. 4a).
- b Notice that whereas in English we use the *ing* form of the verb after *see*, in Spanish we must use the infinitive which comes immediately after *ver*. The personal *a* must be used when we see people doing something. Notice the difference between *veo llegar a Luis*: *I see Luis arriving* and *veo llegar el tren*: *I see the train arriving* (App. 10a).
- 9 Ahora conocerán a mi familia. *Now you will meet (know) my family.*
Conocer means *to meet, get to know* as well as *to know*. *Conocerán* is the third person plural form of the future tense.
- 10 Nació en Bilbao y es vasca pura. *She was born in Bilbao and is pure Basque.*
- a Nació: *he/she was born*: *you (Vd) were born* Remember *nací*: *I was born* (L3, N3a).
- b Es vasca: *she's (a) Basque* The Basques live in the Basque provinces of France and Spain at the western end of the Pyrenees. They have their own culture, traditions and language, which is unrelated to any other known tongue. Bilbao is one of Spain's leading ports and industrial cities and is the biggest city in the Basque country.
- 11 Tiene los ojos azules y el cabello negro. *She has blue eyes and black hair.*
- a Remember that the definite article is used in such descriptions (L10, N15a).

- b Cabello is an alternative to *pelo*. Do not mix it up with *caballo*: *horse*.
- 12 María es una cocinera excelente. *María is an excellent cook.*
Because we are saying what sort of a cook María is we have to put in *una*. We can say *es cocinera*: *she's a cook* but *es una cocinera excelente*: *she's an excellent cook*. Likewise *es médico*: *he's a doctor* but *es un buen médico*: *he's a good doctor*.
- 13 Otro miembro importante de la familia es Sultán. *Another important member of the family is Sultan.*
Remember *otro*: *other, another*.
- 14 Sultán es un perro pastor alemán. *Sultan is a German sheepdog.*
perro: *dog*; *pastor*: *shepherd*
- 15 Estaré contento de ver a mi cuñado Ramón. *I shall be pleased to see my brother-in-law Ramón.*
- a Estaré is the *yo* form of the future tense of *estar* (App. 1e).
- b *Estar contento* takes *de* before a following infinitive or noun.
- 16 Él y su familia pronto estarán en Barcelona. *He and his family will soon be in Barcelona.*
Estarán is the third person plural form of the future tense of *estar*.

Part two

Carta desde Sevilla *A letter from Seville*

- 17 ¿Quieres que la lea? *Do you want me to read it?*
- a The subjunctive *lea* is used after *querer* (L11, N1a).
- b *La* refers to *la carta*.
- 18 Léela. *Read it.*
- a *Lee* is the *tú* command form of *leer*. Just as the *tú* command form of *ar* verbs is formed by removing *s* from the *tú* form of the present tense (L9, N35a), so for *er* and *ir* verbs you do exactly the same thing. Lees: *you read* — *Lee*: *read* (App. 1b).
- b Remember that with command forms any object pronouns are attached to the end of the verb (L11, N31b).
- 19 3 de mayo de 1973 *3rd of May 1973*
Notice that in Spanish we say *three of May* and not *third* and that 1973 is expressed by *mil novecientos setenta y tres*, *mil* meaning *a thousand* and *novecientos*: *nine hundred*. You have to put *de* between the month and the year.
- 20 Queridos todos: *Dear everyone (all)*:
- 21 Deseamos que estéis bien y contentos. *We hope (wish) that you are well and happy.*
It is quite common to use *desear* in the sense of *to hope* when you are hoping for something for another person. *Desear*, being a verb of emotion, is followed by a subjunctive.

- 22 Mañana iremos a Nerja. *Tomorrow we shall go to Nerja*
Iremos is the **nosotros** form of the future tense of **ir** (N4).
- 23 en la Costa del Sol. *on the Coast of the Sun.*
La Costa del Sol is the stretch of the Spanish coast lying between Gibraltar and Almería.
- 24 Hemos alquilado un apartamento, a tres minutos de la playa. *We've rented an apartment, (at) three minutes from the beach.*
You should always put in a when you are explaining distances.
- 25 Ya podéis imaginar que pensamos pasar el día en la playa. *You can imagine that we intend to spend the day on the beach*
- 26 tumbados al sol, nadando, jugando al tenis, etc. *stretched out in the sun, swimming, playing tennis etc.*
- a The plural form **tumbados** is used as the whole family is being referred to.
- b Note that there is only one **n** in **tenis**.
- 27 En los próximos días haremos varias excursiones a lugares de interés como Granada. *In the days ahead (next days) we shall make several trips to places of interest like Granada.*
- a Haremos is the **nosotros** form of the future tense of **hacer**. As you can see it is irregular although it has the same ending as a regular verb would have (App. 4e);
- b Granada was the last Spanish city under Moorish rule, which only came to an end in 1492. It is best known for the Moorish palace known as the Alhambra.
- 28 disfrutando mucho con las ferias y todo lo demás. *enjoying very much the fair and everything else.*
disfrutar con: to enjoy
- 29 Luis ha pasado un par de días con nosotros. *Luis has spent a couple (pair) of days with us.*
- 30 Hoy le escribo también. *Today I'm writing to him too.*
- a Le means *to him* and is known as an indirect object pronoun (App. 14c). Like direct objects such as **lo**, **la** etc. it comes before the verb except with commands, infinitives and gerunds (L11, N31b, 33).
- b escribir: to write
- 31 Le veréis pronto. *You will see him soon,*
- a Le means *him* as well as *to him*.
- b Veréis is the **vosotros** form of the future tense of **ver**.
- 32 ya que definitivamente irá a Barcelona en el verano. *since he'll definitely be going to Barcelona in the summer.*
Irá is the third person singular form of the future tense of **ir** (App. 1e).
- 33 la fecha de llegada. *the date of (our) arrival.*
- 34 Iremos en vuelo directo de Málaga a Barcelona. *We'll go on (a) direct flight from Málaga to Barcelona.*

- 35 Os avisaremos con tiempo. *We'll let you know in (with) time.*
a Os is the direct and indirect object pronoun to use to people you address as **vosotros** (L11, N24) (App. 14b, c).
- b Avisaremos is the **nosotros** form of the future tense of **avisar**: to inform, advise, let know.

Preparativos para la llegada de los Muñoz. *Preparations for the arrival of the Muñoz family*

- 36 ¿Qué hay para comer? *What is there to eat?*
- 37 Tengo un hambre canina. *I could eat a horse (lit: I have a canine hunger).*
- a Hambre is a feminine noun but as it begins with **h** with the stress of the word on **a**, we have to use **un** with it just as we did with **un ama de casa** (L6, N8b).
- b Tener un hambre canina is a very colloquial expression.
- 38 Hay entremeses, sopa de verduras y merluza a la vasca. *There are hors d'oeuvres, vegetable soup and hake Basque style.*
Merluza a la vasca is hake prepared in a **salsa verde**: green sauce made of oil, parsley and lemon juice or vinegar, garnished with asparagus, fat clams and parsley.
- 39 Mañana irán a Nerja. *Tomorrow they'll be going to Nerja.*
Irán is the third person plural form of the future tense of **ir** (App. 1e).
- 40 Dicen que nos avisarán con tiempo. *They say that they will let us know in time.*
- a Nos: **us** is of course placed before the verb as it is an object pronoun (App. 14c).
- b Avisarán is the third person plural form of the future tense of **avisar**.
- 41 ¿Dónde los instalaremos? *Where shall we put them?*
Instalaremos is the **nosotros** form of the future tense of **instalar**: to put, install.
- 42 Tus tíos dormirán en el cuarto de los huéspedes; *Your uncle and aunt will sleep in the guest room (room of the guests);*
- a Tíos, the plural of **tío**: *uncle*, is used for *uncle and aunt*.
- b Dormirán is the third person plural form of the future tense of **dormir**.
- 43 doña Cristina ocupará la otra habitación vacante, *doña Cristina will occupy the other empty room,*
Ocupará is the third person singular form of the future tense of **ocupar**.
- 44 y Marisol puede dormir en una cama plegable en el salón. *and Marisol can sleep on a folding bed in the lounge.*
- 45 ¿dónde dormirá Luis cuando venga? *where will Luis sleep when he comes?*
When **cuando** introduces some future event, as it does here, and it is not a question, the verb following must be a subjunctive (App. 9g).

- 46 Tendremos que poner otra cama plegable allí. *We shall have to put another folding bed there.*
Tendremos is the nosotros form of the future of tener (App. 4e). This is an irregular future as was haremos from hacer (N27a).
- 47 Cuando vengan, no los vamos a reconocer, después de tanto tiempo. *When they come, we are not going to recognise them, after so much time.*
Note the subjunctive after cuando again (N45).
- 48 Sobre todo Marisol estará muy cambiada. *Marisol especially will be greatly changed.*
Estará is the third person singular form of the future of estar.
- 49 ya será una señorita hecha y derecha. *she'll already be a really grown up young lady.*
a Será is the third person singular form of the future of ser (App. 1e).
b Hecha y derecha is a colloquial way of putting *really grown up*.

Part three

La lógica de Pablo *Pablo's logic*

- 50 ¿Estás enfermo? *Are you ill?*
You should always use *estar* with *enfermo* unless you wish to say that someone is permanently ill, i.e. an invalid, in which case you would use *ser* (App. 11).

Dificultades de comunicación *Communication difficulties*

- 51 quisiera decirle que la quiero mucho. *I'd like to tell her that I love her very much.*
Le and *la* are both translated by *her*. *Le* has the sense of *to her* and is an indirect object while *la* is the direct object (App. 14b, c).
- 52 Es difícil. *Vive en Suecia.* *It's difficult. She lives in Sweden.*
- 53 Porque no sé una palabra de sueco. *Because I don't know a word of Swedish.*

Los planes de don Federico *Don Federico's plans*

- 54 Secretaria *Secretary*
- 55 ¿Qué quiere que les diga? *What do you want me to say to them?*
a *les: them, to them*
b *Diga* is the *yo* form of the present subjunctive of *decir*.
- 56 Dígales que irá a verlos el domingo. *Tell (to) them that I'll go and see them on Sunday.*
You will have noticed that we now have *los* as well as *les* meaning *them*. The difference is that *los* means *them* (masc.) and *las* *them* (fem.). *Les* however can mean *them* (people only not things) and *to them* (App. 14b, c).

Lección trece Lesson thirteen

Diego y Teresa
Diego and Teresa

What happens

Part one

Diego, the son of don Felipe and doña María, introduces himself. For the past five months he has been a journalist. He is particularly interested in cars, swimming and bowling. He has a fiancée, Teresa, who works as a secretary on the same paper as Diego.

Part two

Teresa espera una llamada. *Teresa is waiting for a call.*

Teresa is at the office waiting for Diego to ring her as she hasn't seen him for two days. Manolita, another secretary, advises her to adopt an air of indifference towards Diego when he does finally ring.

Diego toma una copa. *Diego has a drink.*

Diego calls into a bar, where he is obviously known, for a drink and to make a phone call.

Charla con Teresa *A chat with Teresa*

Diego rings Teresa and tells her that he has been very busy interviewing someone very important in Valencia. Teresa remains very cool but Diego arranges to pick her up from the office at six o'clock.

Part three

Eduardo está enamorado. *Eduardo is in love.*

To please his fiancée, Eduardo agrees to buy a box of chocolates for her mother, a couple of ties for her father and some red roses for her.

El señor Navarro una vez más *Mr. Navarro again*

Mr. Navarro is in very good humour until he discovers that he cannot pay for his coffee as he has lost 5000 pesetas.

3 New words in this lesson

el aperitivo appetizer
el artículo article
el barman barman
los bolos bowling
el bombón chocolate, sweet
el noticiero messenger
el periodista journalist, reporter
el pez fish
el "pez gordo" "big fish"
el tipo character, fellow

la ambición ambition
la bolera bowling alley
la corbata tie
la culpa fault, blame
la disculpa excuse
la ginestra gin
la importancia importance
la indiferencia indifference
la natación swimming
la oveja sheep
la prometida fiancée
la redacción editorial dept.,
newspaper office
la rosa rose
la tónica tonic water
la verdad truth

catalán Catalan
chata love (lit. flat-nosed)
décimotercero thirteenth
deportista sporting
enamorado in love
encantador delightful
gordo fat
inteligente intelligent
nervioso nervous
nuevo new
rojo red

sensible sensitive
conducir to drive
cumplir to reach the age of, attain
dar igual to be all the same
dejar to leave, to let; allow
entrevistar to interview
existir to exist
fingir to pretend
interesar to interest
mecanografiar to type
poseer to possess

las them
le him, you, to you
les you, to you
nadie nobody, no one
se to you, for her, for him
te you, to you, for you
aunque although

a menudo often
claro que of course
ni siquiera not even
por aquí round here
prácticamente practically
probablemente probably
verdaderamente really, truly

allá tú it's up to you
de acuerdo all right, agreed
hasta luego cheerio
hasta pronto see you soon
no pasa nada nothing's the matter
¿qué pasa? what's the matter?
una vez más once again

ciento a hundred
veintidós twenty-two
veintisiete twenty-seven

Notes

Part one

- Ahora les habla Diego: *Now Diego is speaking to you:*
Les, in addition to meaning *them*, to *them* (L12, N56), also means *you*, to *you* referring to people you would address as *ustedes* (App. 14c).
- la "oveja negra" de la familia Romero. *the "black sheep" of the Romero family.*
This is said by Diego in jest and la *oveja negra* does not have the strength of meaning in Spanish as *black sheep* does in English.
- Acabo de cumplir veintidós años. *I've just turned twenty-two.*
a Remember acabar de: *to have just* (L3, N29).

- cumplir veintidós años: *to attain (reach) twenty-two years*
Note the accent on *veintidós* (App. 18a).

- Soy periodista. *I'm a journalist.*

- Hace cinco meses que trabajo en el Noticiero Catalán. *I've been working on the Catalan Messenger for five months.*

- Remember *hace...* que referring to time (L6, N10).

- Noticiero Catalán is a fictitious newspaper, its title indicating that it serves the region of Catalonia in the north east of Spain.

- Aunque nació en Barcelona no soy verdaderamente catalán. *Although I was born in Barcelona I'm not really Catalan.*

Diego says this because his parents come from the Basque country and from Aragón, to the west of Catalonia. Most true Catalans speak their own language, Catalan, as well as Castilian Spanish to which it is closely related. Castilian Spanish is the official language of the whole of Spain. A variant of Catalan is also spoken in the Valencia region and another in the Balearic Islands (Majorca, Minorca, Ibiza).

- prácticamente me interesa todo. *practically everything interests me.*

- Soy un tipo bastante deportista. *I'm a somewhat sporting character.*
Deportista is both masculine and feminine.

- y me entusiasman los coches antiguos. *and I love old cars.*

- Ahora tengo un Seat 127 (ciento veintisiete). *Now I have a Seat 127 (one hundred and twenty-seven).*

Seat stands for Sociedad Española de Automóviles y Transportes.

- Es un coche simpático y me gusta conducirlo; *It's a nice car and I like driving it;*

- pero mi ambición es poseer un Hispano-Suiza. *but my ambition is to possess a Hispano-Suiza.*

The Hispano-Suiza is Spain's best known vintage car and it would be very expensive to acquire one.

- También me gustan mucho la natación y los bolos. *I also very much like swimming and bowling.*

- Teresa y yo vamos a menudo a una bolera. *Teresa and I often go to a bowling alley.*

- Teresa es mi prometida. ¡Qué palabra! *Teresa is my fiancée (lit: promised one)! What a word!*

Prometida is similar to the now outdated English term *intended*.

- Se la presentaré a Vds. *I'll introduce her to you.*

- Here we have two object pronouns, *se* and *la*, being used in the same sentence. *Se* stands for *les*: *to you*. When two object pronouns are used together, the indirect one always precedes the direct. Hence *les* would precede *la*. Whenever this happens the indirect object *le* or *les* will change to *se* and be followed by *lo*, *la*, *le*, *los*, *las*, *les*, as the case may be (App. 14c).

- b As *les* could mean *to them*, as well as *to you*, a *Vds.* is added after the verb to make the meaning perfectly clear.
- 17 Verán qué chica más encantadora, sensible, inteligente, etc. You will see what an enchanting, sensitive, intelligent girl (she is).
Encantadora is the feminine form of encantador. Adjectives ending in *or* add *a* in the feminine form. You will recall that apart from adjectives of nationality (e.g. español) adjectives ending in a consonant do not have a distinctive feminine form.

Part two

Teresa espera una llamada. Teresa is waiting for a call.

- 18 ¿Qué te pasa, Teresa? What's the matter with you, Teresa?
- 19 Pareces nerviosa. You look nervous.
- 20 No me pasa nada. Nothing's the matter with me.
Remember, you must put *no* before a verb if *nada* comes after it.
- 21 ¿Por qué me lo preguntas? Why do you ask me?
Here we have another occasion where we cannot really translate *lo* which refers to what Manolita has asked Teresa.
- 22 Si no quieres decírmelo, allá tú. If you don't want to tell me (it), it's up to you.
- a Me: *to me* (indirect object) and *lo*: *it* (direct object) are both added to the end of the infinitive. When two pronouns are attached to an infinitive an accent has to be placed on the *a*, *e* or *i* of the infinitive ending to show that the stress remains there (App. 14c).
- b Allá tú is a very colloquial expression.
- 23 pero se ve que algo va mal. but it's obvious that something is wrong.
Se ve que: it can be seen that, it's obvious.
- 24 Hace dos días que no le veo y ni siquiera me ha telefonado. I haven't seen him for two days and he hasn't even phoned me.
ni siquiera: not even
- 25 Estará ocupado. He must be (will be) busy.
As you can see, the future tense can be used in Spanish for *must* just as it can be in English.
- 26 Ya le he llamado a su casa. I've already called him at (his) home
- 27 Ya verás como te llama hoy. You'll see that (how) he'll call you today.
- 28 Cuando lo haga, finge indiferencia. When he does so, pretend to be indifferent (feign indifference).
- a Cuando lo haga: when he does so Remember the use of the subjunctive after *cundo* (L12, N45, 47).
- b Finge is the tú command form of fingir: *to pretend*, the *yo* form of which is finjo.

- 29 Valdrá la pena. It'll be worth it.
Valdrá is the future tense form of *vale* (App. 4e).
- 30 le haré creer que no me importa. I'll make him think that it doesn't matter to me.
- 31 Estoy mecanografiando un artículo para el periodista nuevo. I'm typing an article for the new reporter.
- 32 ¿No te parece muy guapo? Don't you think he's very handsome?
- 33 ¿Saldrás con él? Will you go out with him?
Saldrás is the tú form of the future tense of *salir* (App. 4e).
- 34 Eso quisiera yo. That's what I'd like.
- 35 Probablemente no sepa que existo. He probably doesn't know I exist.
Sepa is the third person singular form of the present subjunctive of *saber* (App. 4h), used here after *probablemente*.

Diego toma una copa. Diego has a drink.

- 36 Barman Barman
- 37 Hace tiempo que no le vemos por aquí. We haven't seen you around here for some time.
- 38 no puedo ver a nadie. I can't see anyone.
Nadie: nobody, not anybody is used in a similar way to *nada* (N20). If it follows a verb then *no* must be placed before the verb. Notice that the personal *a* is used with *nadie*.
- 39 ¿Qué le sirvo? What can I get you (what do I serve you)?
Sirvo is the *yo* form of the present tense of *servir* (i): *to serve*.
- 40 Una ginebra con tónica, a gin and (with) tonic,
- 41 ¿Alguna cosita para aperitivo? Something small as an appetizer?
Cosita is the diminutive form of *cosa*. Remember Luisito for Luis in Lesson 1.

Charla con Teresa A chat with Teresa

- 42 Redacción Editorial
- 43 Hola, chata. Hello, love.
The literal meaning of *chata* is *flat-nosed* but it is used as a term of endearment meaning *love, darling, sweetheart* etc.
- 44 y tú tienes la culpa. and it's your fault (lit: you have the blame).
- 45 Déjame que te lo explique... Let me explain to you...
The subjunctive is used here after a verb of allowing or permitting (App. 9b).
- b Explique is the *yo* form of the present subjunctive of *explicar*. In order to indicate that the hard *c* sound remains the *c* changes to *qu* before *e*. So we have *explico* becoming *explique* in the subjunctive (App. 5a). Remember how the subjunctive form of *llegar* becomes *llegue* (L10, N2b).

- 46 No me expliques. *Don't explain to me.*
 a The tú form of the present subjunctive is used to give negative commands to a person whom you address as tú (App. 9d). So we have **explica**: explain; **no expliques**: don't explain.
 b With negative commands object pronouns are placed before the verb.
 Hence: **explicame**: explain to me
no me expliques: don't explain to me (App. 14b).
- 47 La verdad es que he tenido que ir a Valencia para entrevistar a un "pez gordo". *The truth is that I've had to go to Valencia to interview a "fat fish".*
 a Valencia, 355 kilometres south of Barcelona, is one of Spain's largest cities. It is a very important port and is well known for its oranges.
 b Un **pez gordo** is a colloquial term for an important person; perhaps a big-wig in English.
- 48 no me des disculpas. *don't give me excuses.*
 Des is the tú form of the present subjunctive of dar. This is another negative command (N46a).
- 49 Ahora te dejo. *Now I'll leave you*
 Dejar means both *to leave* and *to let, allow* (N45a).
- 50 cuando salgas de la oficina. *when you leave the office.*
 Salgas is the tú form of the present subjunctive of salir (App. 4a).
- 51 Como quieras. *As you like.*
 The subjunctive is sometimes used in certain fixed expressions such as *as you like*. Depending on how you address the person you are speaking to you can say: (tú) como quieras; (Vd.) como quiera; (vosotros) como queráis; (Vds.) como quieran.
- 52 Me da igual. *It's all the same to me.*
- 53 No seas tonta. *Don't be silly.*
 Here we have another negative command (N46a, 48), seas being the tú form of the present subjunctive of ser.
- 54 Hasta pronto. *See you soon,*
- 55 Hasta luego. *Cheerio.*

Part three

Eduardo está enamorado. *Eduardo is in love.*

- 56 una caja de bombones. *a box of chocolates.*
 57 De acuerdo. Se la comprará. *All right. I'll buy it for her.*
 a De acuerdo: *agreed*
 b Se here stands for *le*: for her and is used because *la* is coming immediately after it (N16a).
 c In English we would probably say *I'll buy them* referring to the chocolates but in Spanish *la* refers to *la caja*: the box.

- 58 un par de corbatas. *a couple of ties.*
 59 Se las comprará. *I'll buy them for him.*
 Here se stands for *le*: for him. (N16a).
 60 Claro que te las comprará: rosas rojas. *Of course I'll buy them for you: red roses.*

Lección catorce

Lesson fourteen

A la Costa del Sol con los Muñoz To the Costa del Sol with the Muñoz family

What happens

Part one

The Muñoz family has now left Seville and doña Julia describes their bus journey through Andalusia to Málaga from where they took a taxi to the fishing village of Nerja where they are going to stay.

Part two

Dirigiéndose al apartamento *Making their way to the apartment*

They take the lift up to their apartment where the charwoman, Regina, is expecting them.

En el apartamento *In the apartment*

They explore the apartment, which is quite large and modern and has a superb view overlooking the sea.

Part three

Marco aprende los verbos reflexivos. *Marco is learning reflexive verbs.*

Marco, an Italian student, pesters his Spanish namesake Marcos, with seemingly trivial questions about his actions that day. Asked why, he says that he is learning Spanish reflexive verbs.

El señor Puente necesita práctica. *Mr. Puente needs training*

After spending three hours bathing Sr. Puente admits to Sr. Díaz that he needs to do some training.

14 New words in this lesson

el acantilado cliff
el bidet bidet
el bolsillo pocket
el cielo sky
el color colour
el comedor dining-room
el cuarto de aseo cloakroom
el cuero leather
el dormitorio bedroom
el fin end
el gas gas
el lavabo wash basin, sink
el mar sea
el mueble furniture (one piece)
los muebles furniture
el nervio nerve
los niños children
el olivar olive grove
el país country
el pescador fisherman
el piso flat
el pueblecito small village
el pueblo village
el roble oak
el salón-comedor lounge-dining-room
el tabaco tobacco
el techo ceiling
el terreno land
el tocadiscos record player
el tresillo three piece suite
el verbo verb
el vestíbulo hall

la asistenta charwoman, daily cleaner
la caña de azúcar sugar cane
la casita small house, cottage
la cocina cooker; kitchen
la cortina curtain
la imitación imitation
la madera wood
la necesidad need
la pared wall
la práctica practice, training
la pregunta question
la puerta door
la puesta del sol sunset
la radio radio

la terraza terrace

amarillo yellow
amplio large, big, spacious
costero coastal
décimo cuarto fourteenth
eléctrico electric
estúpido stupid
extra extra
fértil fertile
impresionante impressive
limpio clean
moderno modern
muerto dead
nuestro our
pintoresco picturesque
rápido quick
raro unusual, strange
reflexivo reflexive
rosa pink
su its, their
triste sad

afeitarse to shave
alegrarse to be happy, pleased, glad
aprender to learn
bajar to turn down
bañarse to bathe
cultivar to cultivate, grow
descansar to rest
despedirse (i) to say good-bye to
dirigirse to make one's way
encerrarse (ie) to lock oneself in
enfermar to be taken ill
lavarse to wash (oneself)
levantarse to get up
peinarse to comb one's hair
ponerse triste to become sad, get sad
quedarse to stay, remain
sentirse (ie) to feel
soportar to stand, bear, put up with
tomar el sol to sunbathe

la de one
me myself
nos ourselves
os yourselves

se himself, herself, yourself, itself,
yourselves, themselves

sin without

además besides
al fin at last
casi almost
más...que more... than
más tarde later

Notes

Part one

- Esta mañana nos hemos levantado temprano; *This morning we (have) got up early;*
Nos hemos levantado is the nosotros form of the perfect tense of the verb *levantarse*: *to get up*. The *se* attached to the infinitive *levantar* indicates that this is a reflexive verb like *cuidarse* (L7, N13b) and *celebrarse* (L9, N3). This reflexive pronoun *se* changes according to the person who is the subject of the verb. Here the subject is *nosotros* and hence the reflexive pronoun is *nos* (App. 6a). Just like object pronouns the reflexive pronoun comes before the verb except with infinitives, gerunds or positive commands (App. 6a).
- y nos hemos despedido de Sevilla. *and we said good bye to Sevilla.*
Here we have the nosotros form of the perfect tense of *despedirse* (i) *de*: *to say good bye to, take one's leave of*. As you can see, reflexive verbs may be *ar*, *er* or *ir* verbs.
- Me he puesto muy triste. *I've become very sad.*
Me is the correct reflexive pronoun to use when the subject of the verb is *yo* (App. 6a).
- Ponerse means *to become* when talking about emotions.
Puesto is the past participle of *poner* and is irregular as you can see.
- ¡Nos hemos divertido tanto allí! *We enjoyed ourselves so much there!*
Nos hemos divertido is the nosotros form of the perfect tense of *divertirse* (ie): *to enjoy oneself*. Sometimes a reflexive verb in Spanish is matched by a reflexive verb in English, as is the case here and with *cuidarse*: *to take care of oneself*, for example. In such cases the reflexive pronoun can be translated, as it is here.
- Nos han gustado mucho los pueblecitos de la provincia. *We liked the little villages of the province very much,*
un pueblecito: *a little village*
- con sus casitas blancas, sus olivares, y sobre todo su cielo tan azul.
with their white cottages, olive groves and above all their very blue sky.

Su means *their* in addition to the earlier meanings you have already met of *his, her, its, your*.

- 7 A eso de las tres hemos llegado a Málaga. *At about three o'clock we arrived in Málaga,*
a eso de: *about, approximately*
8 donde hemos descansado un poco. *where we rested a little.*
9 Más tarde hemos tomado un taxi, dirigiéndonos hacia Nerja. *Later we took a taxi, making our way towards Nerja.*
a más tarde: *later (lit: more late)*
b hemos tomado: *we took* You may have noticed that in this lesson the Spanish perfect tense has been translated into English by both the present perfect tense (e.g. *I have become very sad*) and the simple past (e.g. *we took*).
c Dirigiéndonos is the gerund of *dirigirse*: *to make one's way*. You will notice that the reflexive pronoun *nos* is attached to the end of the gerund (N1) and that an accent is now necessary to show that the stress remains in the same place (App. 6b).
d The *yo* form of *dirigirse* in the present tense is *me dirijo* (L13, N28b). All verbs ending in *gir* change *g* to *j* before *a* and *o*.
10 en este pintoresco pueblo costero; *in this picturesque coastal town;*
Un pueblo is larger than un pueblecito but smaller than una ciudad.
11 con su antiguo barrio de pescadores y su acantilado impresionante. *with its old fishermen's quarter and its impressive cliff.*
12 El terreno en esta parte del país es muy fértil. *The land in this part of the country is very fertile.*
13 Cultivan el tabaco y la caña de azúcar. *They cultivate tobacco and sugar cane.*

Part two

Dirigiéndose al apartamento *Making their way to the apartment*

- 14 Dirigiéndose The reflexive pronoun to use when referring to ellos, ellas, Vds, i.e. the third person plural, is *se*.
15 No las encuentro. *I can't find them.*
There is no need to use *poder* in such sentences in Spanish when you are not talking about the physical impossibility of doing something, but rather stating that you have been unsuccessful in doing something.
16 las tengo en el bolsillo. *I've got them in my pocket.*
17 ¡Uy! ¡Qué rápido es este ascensor! *Oh! How fast this lift is!*
18 Regina, la asistenta, estará esperando. *Regina, the charwoman, will be waiting.*
19 Por lo menos ahora podremos lavarnos y peinarnos. *At least now we shall be able to wash (ourselves) and comb our hair.*

- a por lo menos: *at least*
b Podremos is the *nosotros* form of the future tense of *poder*.
c When the infinitive of a reflexive verb is used, the reflexive pronoun attached to the end must take into account the subject of the verb which the infinitive depends on. Here we have *podremos* and so the infinitives must be *lavarnos* and *peinarnos*.
Other examples; *podré lavarme*: *I shall be able to wash*
podrán lavarse: *they will be able to wash* (App. 6c).
20 y yo me afeitare al fin. *and I shall shave at last.*
afeitarse: *to shave* It is always customary when listing reflexive verbs in vocabularies etc. to show them with *se* attached to the infinitive.
En el apartamento *In the apartment*
21 Mucho gusto en conocerla. *Very pleased to meet you (lit: much pleasure in knowing you).*
a La: *you* is used here as Doña Julia is talking to a female whom she addresses formally as *Vd*. If she were talking to a male she would use *le*.
b This is a useful phrase to remember, bearing in mind that the pronoun will change according to the number and sex of the people you're meeting.
22 Esta primera puerta, a la izquierda del vestíbulo, da al cuarto de aseo. *This first door, on the left of the hall, leads into the cloakroom.*
a dar a: *to lead to* (doors, corridors etc.)
b El cuarto de aseo would normally comprise a toilet, a shower and a wash basin.
23 Me alegro de que haya una ducha y un lavabo extras. *I'm glad there's an extra shower and wash basin.*
a Alegrarse de: *to be glad of, about* As it is a verb of emotion it is followed by a subjunctive, *haya*.
b Notice that *extras* is a plural adjective as it refers to both *ducha* and *lavabo*.
24 Así tendremos donde ir cuando Marisol se encierre en el cuarto de baño. *So we shall have somewhere to go when Marisol locks herself in the bathroom.*
a Se is the reflexive pronoun for the third person singular (*él, ella, Vd.*) form of the verb, as well as for the third person plural (N14). Try not to confuse it with *se* meaning *one, they* or with *se* standing in place of *le* and *les* (App. 14c).
b Notice that *encerrarse (ie)* is used in the subjunctive after *cuando* referring to future events (App. 9g).
25 Y éstos son los dormitorios más pequeños... *And these are the smallest bedrooms...*
a When *éste, ésta, éstos* and *éstas* are used without a noun following, i.e. when they are no longer adjectives but pronouns, an accent is written on the first *e*.

- b más pequeños: *smallest*
 26 Éste es el salón-comedor. *This is the lounge-dining-room.*
 Note the accent on éste in this sentence (N25a).
 27 Es raro encontrar habitaciones tan amplias en un piso tan moderno.
It's unusual to find such spacious rooms in such a modern flat.
 Tan used with an adjective is translated by *so*, e.g. *la habitación es tan amplia: the room is so spacious*. However, used with both a noun and an adjective, it can be translated by *such*, as in the above sentence.
 28 ¡Qué tresillo tan bonito! *What a nice three piece suite!*
 Here, of course, *tan* is not translated (L10, N12).
 29 ¿Será de cuero? *Can it be (made) of leather?*
 a This is another example of the future tense being used to express supposition rather than actual future time (L13, N25).
 b Ser de is the usual expression to use if you want to say what something is made of.
 30 No, sólo imitación. *No, only imitation.*
 31 La mesa de comedor parece de madera de roble... *The dining table seems (to be made) of oak...*
 a la madera: *wood*
 b el roble: *oak tree*
 32 Vamos a ver la terraza... *Let's go and see the terrace...*
 33 ¡Qué vista tan magnífica con el mar a nuestros pies! *What a wonderful view with the sea at our feet!*
 nuestro: *our* Unlike *mi*, *tu* and *su*, *nuestro* has a feminine form *nuestra*.
 34 ¡Mirad! ¡Qué hermosa puesta del sol! *Look! What a beautiful sunset!*
 Mirad is the *vosotros* command form of *mirar*. To form the *vosotros* command of any verb you replace the *r* of the infinitive with *d*. You'll be pleased to know there are no exceptions to this. You now know how to give commands or instructions to anybody whether you address them as *tú* or *Vd.*, *vosotros* or *Vds.* (App.1b).
 35 Casi podremos tomar el sol aquí, sin necesidad de ir a la playa. *We shall almost be able to sunbathe (take the sun) here, without needing to go to the beach (the need of going to the beach).*
 36 Aquí tenemos la cocina. *Here we have the kitchen.*
 37 y la cocina es eléctrica. *and the cooker is electric.*
 Note the two meanings of *la cocina*.
 38 Más cómoda y limpia que la de gas. *More convenient and cleaner than a gas one.*
 a You have already come across *más pequeños: smallest* (N25b). The Spanish method of expressing the comparative and superlative of an adjective (the forms in English which end in *er* and *est* or use *more* and

- most* before the adjective) is simply to place *más: more* before the adjective.
 b más...que: *more...than*
 c la de gas: *a gas one* Remember el de *faena* (L11, N28c).
 Here la de *gas* stands for *la cocina de gas*.
 39 Todo es de color rosa: *Everything is in (of) pink:*
 40 las paredes, el techo, el lavabo, el bidet, todo. *the walls, the ceiling, the wash basin, the bidet, everything.*
 41 Da a la piscina— *it overlooks the swimming pool—*
 Dar a can also mean to *overlook* as well as to *lead to* (N22a).
 42 los muebles son bonitos y estas cortinas amarillas también. *the furniture is pretty and these yellow curtains too.*
 Los muebles: *furniture* is a plural noun in Spanish. Un mueble would be *one piece of furniture*.
 43 ¿quieres bajar la radio, por favor? *will you turn the radio down, please?*
 44 No sé cómo puedes soportar ese ruido infernal. *I don't know how you can stand that infernal noise.*
 45 Además hemos venido aquí a descansar, no a enfermar de los nervios. *Besides we've come here to rest, not to be taken ill with our nerves.*
 46 ¡Gracias a Dios que no hay tocadiscos en el apartamento! *Thank God there's no record player in the apartment!*

Part three

Marco aprende los verbos reflexivos. *Marco is learning reflexive verbs.*

- 47 oye ¿por qué haces estas preguntas tan estúpidas? *listen, why are you asking these very stupid questions?*
 a Oye is the *tú* command form of *oír*.
 b hacer una pregunta: *to ask a question*
 El señor Puente necesita práctica. *Mr. Puente needs training.*
 48 ¿Os habéis bañado ya? *Have you bathed yet?*
 a Os is the reflexive pronoun to use with the *vosotros* form of the verb.
 b Bañarse: *to bathe* or *to swim* not to have a bath which is *tomar un baño*.
 49 Os habéis divertido mucho, ¿no? *You'll have enjoyed yourselves a lot, won't you?*
 50 me siento más muerto que vivo. *I feel more dead than alive.*
 Sentir (ie) is used in the reflexive form *sentirse* when referring to personal emotions or physical feelings.

5 Lección quince

Lesson fifteen

What happens

Part one

D. Ramón tells us a little more about Nerja, mentioning in particular the prehistoric caves and the pleasure he gets from going to the harbour in the morning to buy fresh fish. Today he has been to Málaga to visit the bank and the post office.

Part two

Dirigiéndose al banco *Making his way to the bank*

A passer-by directs D. Ramón to a branch of the Bank of Spain.

En el banco *In the bank*

D. Ramón wishes to arrange a transfer of 40,000 pesetas from his account with the central branch in Madrid. It will take a couple of days.

Departamento de cambio de moneda extranjera *Foreign exchange department*

D. Ramón changes some traveller's cheques, asking the bank clerk what the rate of exchange of the U.S. dollar is against the Spanish peseta.

En la caja *At the cash desk*

D. Ramón collects his currency.

En correos *At the post office*

D. Ramón sends a telegram to D. Felipe in Barcelona to advise him of the date and time of their arrival.

Part three

Basilio abre una cuenta corriente. *Basilio opens a current account.*

Basilio receives red carpet treatment from the bank manager when he goes to open an account. The latter has a shock when he learns how much Basilio has to deposit. Remember how much a duro is worth!

Bolsa del día *Daily rate of exchange*

The bank clerk has to ask Sr. Jiménez to go easy when he wishes to change 600 U.S. dollars into pesetas and then wants to change pesetas into French francs, Swiss francs and pounds sterling. He seems to have other requirements as well.

Don Ramón hace un viaje a Málaga.
Don Ramón takes a trip to Málaga.

New words in this lesson

el aviso de pago advice of payment
el banco bank
el cambio exchange
correos Post Office
el cheque cheque
el cheque de viajero traveller's cheque
el departamento department
el destinatario addressee
el dólar dollar
el franco franc
el habano Havana cigar
el habitante inhabitant
el impreso form
el kilómetro kilometre
el medio de vida livelihood, way of life
los negocios business
el pago payment
el puerto harbour, port
el recibo receipt
el remitente sender
el resto rest, remainder
el telegrama telegram
el transeúnte passer-by
el viajero traveller
la avenida avenue
la caja cash desk
la central Head Office
la cotización rate of exchange, price, quotation
la cuenta account
la cueva cave
la dirección address
la libra pound sterling
la moneda coin
la pesca fishing
la población population
la sucursal branch
la transferencia transfer
la visita visit
actual present
alegre happy, gay
comercializado commercialized
corriente current
décimoquinto fifteenth
esterlina sterling
oficial official

optimista optimistic
poco comercializado unspoiled
prehistórico prehistoric
principal main
suizo Swiss
tranquilo peaceful
urgente urgent

acercarse to approach, get near
cobrar to collect, cash
continuar to continue
disfrutar de to enjoy
distar de to be distant from
enviar to send
fluctuar to fluctuate
hacer esquina to be on the corner, stand on the corner
impresionar to impress
notificar to notify
pasar a to go over to
pasear to stroll, go for a walk
rellenar to fill in
sentarse (ie) to sit down
suponer to suppose
torcer (ue) to turn (corners etc.)
transferir (ie) to transfer
vender to sell

uno one

fuera de out of, away from
lejos de far from
por medio de by means of, through,
by
por valor de to the value of

hasta que until

cerca near
felizmente happily

¿cuál? what?, which (one)?
cuyo whose

cien one hundred
quince fifteen
seiscientos six hundred

Part one

- 1 Nuestras vacaciones en Nerja continúan felizmente. *Our holidays in Nerja are continuing happily.*
- a Notice the accent on the u of continúan. Verbs which end in uar have an accent on the u of all forms of the present tense and the present subjunctive, except for the nosotros and vosotros forms (App. 3).
- b **felizmente:** *happily* To turn a Spanish adjective into an adverb you add *mente* to it, just as we can add *ly* to an English adjective. So we have *feliz:* *happy*; *felizmente:* *happily*. If the adjective ends in o you must add *mente* to the feminine singular form, e.g. *perfecto:* *perfect*; *perfectamente:* *perfectly* (App. 131).
- 2 Todos nos sentimos muy optimistas y alegres. *We all feel very optimistic and happy.*
- 3 Nerja es un lugar tranquilo y poco comercializado. *Nerja is a quiet, unspoiled (little commercialized) place,*
- 4 donde uno todavía puede disfrutar de las vacaciones. *where one can still enjoy one's holidays.*
disfrutar *de:* *to enjoy* This is an alternative to *disfrutar con* (L12, N28).
- 5 Tiene una población de 8.000 habitantes, cuyo principal medio de vida es la pesca. *It has a population of 8,000 inhabitants, whose main livelihood is (the) fishing.*
- a Cuyo: *whose* is an adjective and therefore must agree with the noun that follows it, here *medio*, and not with the person or persons it refers to. *Habitantes* is a plural noun, for example.
- b el medio de vida: *way of life, livelihood*
- 6 Me gusta mucho pasear por las mañanas y acercarme al puerto para comprar el pescado fresco. *I love going for a stroll in the morning and going along to the harbour to buy (the) fresh fish.*
- a por las mañanas: *in the mornings*
- b acercarse a: *to approach, draw near to*
- c El pescado is used for fish after it has been caught. For a fish which is alive and in the water we use el pez which you came across in el pez gordo (L13, N47b).
- 7 Por ejemplo, las cuevas prehistóricas que me han impresionado mucho. *For example, the prehistoric caves which have impressed me greatly.*
- 8 Nerja dista cincuenta y un kilómetros de Málaga. *Nerja is fifty-one kilometres distant from Málaga.*
dista *de:* *to be distant from*
- 9 Hoy he hecho una visita a esta capital. *Today I've paid a visit to this capital.*

- a hacer una visita: *to pay a visit*
- b La capital is used for the administrative centre of any of the Spanish provinces as well as for Madrid. Here it refers to Málaga.
- 10 Allí he visitado el Banco de España. *There I visited the Bank of Spain.*
- 11 Después de mirar las cotizaciones oficiales, he cambiado algunos cheques de viajero. *After looking at the official rates of exchange, I changed some traveller's cheques.*
- 12 he ido a correos para enviar un telegrama. *I went to the post office to send a telegram.* You will find the word *correos:* *post office* on Spanish stamps.

Part two

Dirigiéndose al banco *Making his way to the bank*

- 13 ¿puede decirme dónde hay una sucursal del Banco de España? *can you tell me where there is a branch of the Bank of Spain?*
- 14 Transeúnte *Passer-by*
- 15 está en la Avenida de Cervantes. *It's in Cervantes Avenue.*
- 16 ¿Está muy lejos de aquí o se puede ir andando? *Is it very far from here or can one walk it (go walking)?*
Andando: *walking* is the gerund of *andar:* *to walk*.
- 17 Está bastante cerca. *It's quite near.*
Remember that you only use *de* with *cerca* when you refer to the place that someone or something is near. *Está cerca de aquí:* *it's near here*, but *Está cerca:* *it's near*. The same applies to *lejos* and *lejos de* (N16).
- 18 Siga hasta el final de esa calle y tuerza a la derecha. *Carry on as far as the end of that street and turn to the right.*
- a Siga is the Vd. command form and hence the present subjunctive of *seguir*(i): *to continue, carry on* (L7, N29).
- b Tuerza is the Vd. command form of *torcer*(ue): *to turn*. In order to keep the lisp sound the c, becomes a z (App. 5d).
- 19 Continúe andando hasta que llegue a la tercera bocacalle de la izquierda. *Continue walking until you reach the third turning to the left.*
Hasta que, like *cuando*, is a conjunction of time and when it refers to future time is followed by the subjunctive (App. 9g).
- 20 El banco es un edificio grande que hace esquina. *The bank is a large building on the corner (which makes corner).*
hacer esquina: *to be, stand on the corner* Esquina is only used for an outside corner and not for an inside one like the corner in a room.

En el banco *In the bank*

- 21 Lo siento, señor, pero está fuera de Málaga. *I'm sorry, sir, but he's out of Málaga.*

- 22 ¿Es algo urgente? *Is it anything urgent?*
 23 Quisiera una transferencia de la central de Madrid por valor de 40.000 pesetas. *I'd like a transfer from the Head Office in Madrid to the value of 40,000 pesetas.*
 24 ¿Tiene Vd. una cuenta corriente allí? *Have you got a current account there?*
 25 ¿Cuánto tiempo tardarán en transferir el dinero? *How long will they take to transfer the money?*
 Tardar en: *to take time in* (L3, N40b).
 26 Supongo que un par de días. *I suppose (that) a couple of days.*
 Supongo is the *yo* form of the present tense of *suponer*: *to suppose*, which follows the pattern laid down for *poner* (App. 4a).
 27 Se lo notificaremos por medio de un aviso de pago. *We'll notify you by means of an advice of payment.*
 a Se here stands for *le*: *to you* (L13, N16a).
 b Lo, not translated, refers to the whole business of making the transfer.
 28 Aquí tiene mi dirección. *Here's my address.*

Departamento de cambio de moneda extranjera *Foreign exchange department*

- 29 ¿cuál es la cotización actual del dólar americano? *what is the present rate of exchange of the American dollar?*
 a ¿cuál?: *what, which, which one?*
 b Note that *actual* means *present* and not *actual*.
 30 Los últimos días fluctúa bastante. *These last (few) days it's (been) fluctuating quite a bit.*
 fluctuar: *to fluctuate* This is another verb ending in *uar* (N1a).
 31 La cotización de hoy es tres pesetas en dólar más baja que ayer. *Today's rate is three pesetas to the dollar lower than yesterday.*
 a la cotización de hoy: *today's rate*
 b tres pesetas en dólar: *three pesetas to the dollar*
 32 Quisiera cambiar estos cheques de viajero. *I'd like to change these traveller's cheques.*
 33 Aquí tiene su recibo. *Here's your receipt.*
 34 pase a caja para cobrar. *go to (the) cash desk to collect.*

En la caja *At the cash desk*

- 35 Déme quince billetes de mil, diez de quinientas y el resto en billetes de cien pesetas. *Give me fifteen one thousand (peseta) notes, ten five hundred (notes) and the rest in one hundred peseta notes,*
 a un billete de mil: *a thousand peseta note*
 un billete de quinientas: *a five hundred peseta note*
 un billete de cien: *a hundred peseta note*

- b Before any noun *ciento*: *a hundred* shortens to *cien* (App. 13g). Un billete de cien is a fixed expression where, although *pesetas* is omitted, *cien* remains in its short form.
 36 Déme también alguna moneda de cincuenta y de veinticinco pesetas. *Give me some fifty and twenty-five peseta coin(s) too.*
 una moneda de cincuenta: *a fifty peseta coin*
 una moneda de veinticinco: *a twenty-five peseta coin*

En correos *At the post office*

- 37 Quisiera enviar un telegrama a Barcelona. *I'd like to send a telegram to Barcelona.*
 a Verbs ending in *iar* like *enviar* have an accent on all forms of the present and present subjunctive, except the *nosotros* and *vosotros* forms (App. 3).
 b Telegrama, despite ending in *a*, is a masculine noun.
 38 Tenga la bondad de rellenar este impreso. *Please fill in this form.*
 39 Destinatario *Addressee*
 40 c/ Ramón Llull 37, 37, Ramón Llull Street,
 a c/ is the abbreviation for *calle*: *street*.
 b Ramón Llull (c1235-1315) was a famous Catalan philosopher.
 c Notice that in Spanish addresses the name of the street precedes the number of the house.
 41 Texto *Text*
 42 Llegamos lunes 26 avión Málaga. *We arrive Monday 26th by air from Málaga.*
 The telegram message is, of course, written so as to save words.
 43 Llegada a Barcelona 21.45. *Arrival time at Barcelona, 21.45.*
 44 Esperamos veros aeropuerto. *We hope to see you at the airport.*
 45 Remitente *Sender*
 46 Avda. del Paseo Marítimo 13, Nerja (Málaga). *13, Avenue del Paseo Marítimo, Nerja (Málaga).*
 a Avda. is the abbreviation for *avenida*: *avenue*
 b Málaga, in brackets after *Nerja*, refers not to the city but to the province of the same name.

Part three

Basilio abre una cuenta corriente. *Basilio opens a current account.*

- 47 Haga el favor de sentarse. *Please sit down.*
 Do not confuse *sentarse* (ie): *to sit down* and *sentirse* (ie): *to feel* (L14, N50).
 48 ¿Cigarrillos o prefiere Vd. un habano? *Cigarettes or do you prefer a cigar?*

- 49 Y ahora hablemos de negocios. *And now let's talk (about) business.*
The nosotros form of the present subjunctive of any verb can be used with the meaning of *let us*. Hence hablemos: *let's talk*.

Bolsa del día *Daily rate of exchange*

- 50 Quisiera saber la cotización oficial del dólar. *I'd like to know the official rate of exchange of the dollar.*
51 ¿Quiere Vd. comprar o vender? *Do you want to buy or to sell?*
52 ahora cámbieme cinco mil pesetas en francos franceses, diez mil pesetas en francos suizos, quince mil en libras esterlinas,... *now change for me five thousand pesetas into French francs, ten thousand pesetas into Swiss francs, fifteen thousand into pounds sterling,...*
53 No soy una máquina. *I'm not a machine.*

Lección dieciséis Lesson sixteen

Vacaciones junto al mar Holidays by the sea

What happens

Part one

Marisol writes a letter to her friend Néida who lives in Chile, telling her about her holiday in Spain.

Part two

En la playa *On the beach*

Marisol has lost yet another pair of sunglasses and neither her father nor mother appears to have any money with them for a new pair.

En la farmacia *At the chemist's*

Marisol goes to the chemist's for various tablets and pills. She also wants some suntan cream and sunglasses and the chemist directs her to a nearby drugstore or perfumery as he does not stock such items.

Marisol quiere un bikini. *Marisol wants a bikini.*

Marisol eventually manages to persuade doña Julia to buy her a bikini although she has to agree to one in orange and not in violet. She and her mother do not agree on which colours suit her best.

Part three

Otro contratiempo del señor Navarro *Another mishap for Mr. Navarro*

Sr. Navarro has not only lost his car keys but seems to have lost his car as well.

Manolo llega a tiempo. *Manolo arrives in time.*

Manolo tells Paco when other members of his family arrived in Málaga and that he himself arrived today just in time for the banquet.

La señora de Ordóñez cumple años. *Mrs. Ordóñez has a birthday.*

Sr. Ordóñez tells Sr. Millán that yesterday they celebrated his wife's twenty-first birthday. In reality, however, she is twice that age.

New words in this lesson

el banquete banquet
el bikini bikini
el contratiempo mishap, setback
el cumpleaños birthday
el doble double
el encargo order, errand
el estómago stomach
el farmacéutico chemist
el gasto expense
el mareo travel sickness
el pariente relation
el traje de baño swimsuit
el traje de gitana gypsy dress
el tubo tube
el vestido dress

la aspirina aspirin
la crema cream
la crema de broncear suntan cream
la droguería drugstore
la farmacia chemist's shop
las gafas de sol sunglasses
la garganta throat
la indisposición indisposition, upset
la pastilla pill
la perfumería perfumery
la sal de frutas fruit salts
la tableta tablet
las tiritas sticking plasters

décimosexto sixteen
de paja made of straw

gris grey
internacional international
naranja orange
pasado de moda old-fashioned, out
of fashion, out of date
superfluo superfluous
violeta violet

alojarse to lodge, stay
aterrizar to land
cerrar(ie) to close, shut
comprender to understand
imaginarse to imagine
meter to put
olvidarse de to forget
pasarle bomba to have a whale of
a time
pedir(i) to ask for
ponerse to put on, wear
prometer to promise
quedar en to agree to
querer(ie) decir to mean
sentar(ie) to suit
tener razón to be right
volar(ue) to fly

a mediados de towards the middle of
junto a by, near

antes before
a tiempo in time
ayer yesterday

enfrente opposite
 en realidad in reality, really
 hace un año que it's a year ago since
 justo just
 lo mismo the same
 según according to
 segundo secondly

¡qué fastidio! what a bore!
 según dicen so they say
 no... tampoco neither, not... either
 veinticuatro twenty-four
 veintinueve twenty-nine

Notes

Part one

- 1 Avda. de España 1624, 1624, Spain Avenue.
 Notice that in Spanish, the number in an address is expressed in full in thousands and hundreds. So here we have mil seiscientos veinticuatro. Remember that the year is expressed in the same way.
- 2 Siento no haberte escrito antes, I'm sorry not to have written to you before.
- a When the infinitive haber and a past participle come together any object pronouns are placed on the end of haber (App. 14b).
- b Escrito is the past participle of escribir: to write. It is the only irregular part of escribir.
- 3 no he tenido tiempo de hacerlo. I haven't had time to do so.
 Tener tiempo requires de before a following infinitive (App. 10c).
- 4 Llegué a España a mediados de abril. I arrived in Spain towards the middle of April.
- a Llegué: I arrived is the yo form of the preterite tense of llegar. The preterite tense, as you can see from the translation, is a past tense. It is the equivalent of the simple past in English, expressing events in the past which are now over and done with. To form the preterite tense of ar verbs you remove the ar of the infinitive and add the endings é; aste; ó; amos; asteis; aron (App. 1g). The u is inserted in verbs like llegar, pagar etc. merely to indicate the hard sound of the g and is not pronounced.
- b a mediados de: towards the middle of This is only used of time and not of place.
- 5 De Santiago volamos a Madrid y aterrizamos en el aeropuerto internacional. From Santiago we flew to Madrid and landed at the international airport. As you can see from volamos and aterrizamos the nosotros form of an ar verb in the preterite is identical to the nosotros form of the present tense. However, there never seems to be any difficulty in knowing whether someone is speaking about the present or the past.
- 6 Mi hermano fue a esperarnos. My brother went to meet us.

Fue is the third person singular form of the preterite tense of ir (App. 4f). It is one of a number of verbs which are irregular in the preterite.

- 7 En Madrid nos alojamos en un hotel de lujo muy cómodo. In Madrid we stayed at a very comfortable luxury hotel.
 Nos alojamos is the nosotros form of the preterite of alojarse: to stay.
- 8 Conocí a un amigo de Luis. I met a friend of Luis.
 Conocí is the yo form of the preterite of conocer: to know, meet. To form the preterite of er and ir verbs you replace the er and ir of the infinitive with the endings í; iste; ío; imos; isteis; ieron (App. 1g).
- 9 ¡Imagínate! Just imagine!
 This is the tú command form of imaginarse: to imagine. Te is the reflexive pronoun to use with the tú forms of reflexive verbs (App. 6).
- 10 mis padres y mi abuela no me dejaron sola con él cinco minutos.
 my parents and my grandmother didn't leave me alone with him for five minutes.
- a Dejaron is the third person plural form of the preterite of dejar (N4a).
- b Notice that the feminine form sola is used as Marisol is referring to herself.
- 11 ¡Qué fastidio! What a bore!
- 12 De Madrid fuimos a Toledo para ver a unos parientes. From Madrid we went to Toledo to see some relations.
 a Fuimos is the nosotros form of the preterite of ir (N6).
- b unos parientes: some relations Remember that the word for parents is padres.
- 13 ¿Puedes imaginarte algo más aburrido que esto? Can you imagine anything more boring than this?
 Remember that you place más: more before an adjective and que: than after it when you wish to make a comparison (App. 13h).
- 14 Manuel (el amigo de Luis) nos llevó a Sevilla en su coche. Manuel (the friend of Luis) took us to Seville in his car.
 Llevó is the third person singular form of the preterite of llevar (N4a).
- 15 Nos quedamos allí para las ferias de abril. We stayed there for the April fair.
 Nos quedamos is the nosotros form of the preterite of quedarse: to stay. Quedarse means to stay in the sense of to remain and so differs from alojarse (N7) which has the sense of to lodge.
- 16 ¡Lo pasó bomba! I had a whale of a time!
 Pasarlo bomba is a colloquial expression used by young people. Pasé is the yo form of the preterite of pasar (N4a).
- 17 Mis padres me compraron un traje de gitana que, según dicen, me sienta muy bien. My parents bought me a gypsy dress which, so they say, suits me very much.

- a Compraron is the third person plural form of the preterite of **comprar** (N4a).
- b según dicen: *so they say, according to what they say*
- c sentar(ie): *to suit*
- 18 Ahora estamos en Nerja, pequeña ciudad cerca de Málaga. *Now we're in Nerja, (a) little town near Málaga.*
Una is left out before **pequeña ciudad** in this sentence. **Ciudad** refers to something just mentioned (Nerja) and in such cases, where the noun is said to be in apposition, the article is left out. You will find another example of this in lesson 2 in the sentence **Ya estamos en Madrid: capital de España** (App. 12b).

Part two

En la playa *On the beach*

- 19 Mis gafas de sol. *My sunglasses.*
- 20 Probablemente las perdiste ayer. *You probably lost them yesterday.*
Perdiste is the tú form of the preterite of **perder** (N8).
- 21 Has perdido tres pares en dos semanas, ¿sabes? *You've lost three pairs in two weeks, do you realise (know)?*
Notice the difference between **perdiste**: *you lost* and **has perdido**: *you have lost*.
- 22 No sé cómo se perdieron. *I don't know how they got lost.*
Se perdieron is the third person plural form of the preterite of **perdersé**: *to get lost* (N8).
- 23 Recuerdo que las metí en el bolso de paja. *I remember that I put them in the straw bag (bag of straw).*
a Metí is the yo form of the preterite of **meter**: *to put* (N8).
- b El bolso de paja: *straw bag*
- 24 Y como siempre te olvidaste de cerrarlo. *And as usual you forgot to shut it.*
a Te olvidaste is the tú form of the preterite of **olvidarse**: *to forget* (N4a).
- b Olvidarse requires de before a following infinitive (App. 10c).
- 25 tendré que comprarme otro par. *I shall have to buy myself another pair.*
Me here means *for myself*.
- 26 Lo dejé todo en casa. *I left it all at home.*
- 27 Pídeselo a papá. *Ask Dad for it.*
- a Pide is the tú command form of **pedir(i)**: *to ask for*. **Pedir** thus differs from **preguntar** which means *to ask a question*.
- b Se here stands for **le**: *to him* referring to **papá**. Although the person being asked is actually mentioned it is customary in Spanish to put in the indirect pronoun as well.

- c Pídeselo When two object pronouns are attached to a command form an accent has to be placed on the stressed vowel of the verb (App. 14c).
- 28 Ya se lo pedí, y dice que lo tienes tú. *I already asked him for it, and he says that you've got it.*
Pedí is the yo form of the preterite of **pedir(i)** (App. 2c).
- 29 ¿En qué quedamos? *What do we do now (lit: On what do we agree)?*
Quedar en: *to agree to*

En la farmacia *At the chemist's*

- 30 Farmacéutico *Chemist*
- 31 Quisiera una caja de tiritas y un tubo de aspirinas. *I'd like a box of sticking plasters and a tube of aspirins.*
- 32 Aquí tengo una lista de los encargos que me ha hecho mi madre. *Here I have a list of (the) goods (orders) which my mother has made up for me.*
- 33 Quisiera algo para una indisposición de estómago, tabletas para el mareo, sal de frutas y también unas pastillas para la garganta. *I'd like something for a stomach upset, tablets for travel sickness, fruit salts and also some pills for the throat.*
- 34 Le haré un paquete con todo. *I'll make a parcel with it all for you.*
- 35 Ahora quisiera unas gafas de sol y crema de broncear. *Now I'd like some sunglasses and suntan cream.*
- 36 Para eso es mejor que vaya a la droguería que hay enfrente *For that it's better for you to go to the drugstore (that there is) opposite*
Es mejor que: *it's better/best that* is always followed by a subjunctive (App. 91).
- 37 o a una perfumería que está en la esquina. *or to a perfumery which is on the corner.*
In Spain you have to go to a **droguería** or **perfumería** if you want to buy cosmetics. In a **farmacia** they only sell medicaments.

Marisol quiere un bikini. *Marisol wants a bikini.*

- 38 este traje de baño está pasado de moda. *this swimsuit is out of fashion.*
- 39 Ayer vi unos bikinis color violeta preciosos. *Yesterday I saw some pretty violet (coloured) bikinis.*
- a Vi is the yo form of the preterite tense of **ver** (App. 4f).
- b color violeta: *violet* Some colours are expressed in Spanish by the word **color**: *colour* and a noun. When this happens neither word changes to agree with the noun described by the colour.
- 40 Todavía no hace un año que te compramos el traje de baño. *It's still not a year (ago) since we bought you your swimsuit.*
no hace un año que: *it's not a year since* **hace un año**: *a year ago*

- 41 prometiste comprame un regalo en España. *you promised to buy me a present in Spain.*
Prometiste is the tú form of the preterite of **prometer**: *to promise* (N8).
Prometer is followed directly by an infinitive (App.10a).
- 42 Primero, porque me parece un gasto superfluo. *Firstly, because it seems an unnecessary (superfluous) expense to me*
- 43 y segundo, porque no me gusta que te pongas nada de color violeta. *and secondly, because I don't like you to wear anything in violet.*
- a No me gusta que is, of course, an expression of emotion and consequently the verb following it has to be a subjunctive. Notice, though, that this expression of disliking is aimed at another person and note the difference between these two sentences;
no me gusta ponerme nada de color violeta: *I don't like wearing anything in violet.*
no me gusta que te pongas nada de color violeta: *I don't like you to wear anything in violet.*
- b de color violeta: *in violet*
- 44 Siempre dices lo mismo. *You always say the same thing.*
Lo mismo does not refer to a particular word but to general remarks of disapproval and so appears in the neuter form.
- 45 Para mí cumpleaños no me comprasteis un vestido gris. *For my birthday you didn't buy me a grey dress.*
Comprasteis is the vosotros form of the preterite of **comprar** (N4a).
Marisol is now criticising both her parents.
- 46 porque según tú, el color gris no me sienta bien tampoco. *because according to you, (the colour) grey doesn't suit me much either.*
- a Según, being a preposition meaning *according to*, would be expected to be followed by **tú** (App.14e). However it is an exception and is also followed by **yo** instead of **mí** if you want to say *according to me*.
- b Tampoco means *neither, nor, not either*. If it follows a verb, as it does here, you must have no preceding the verb, e.g. **no me gusta tampoco**: *I don't like it either.*
- 47 pero en naranja. *but in orange.*
- 48 Ese color es más bonito que el violeta. *That colour is prettier than violet.*
más bonito que: *prettier than* (N13)

Part three

Otro contratiempo del señor Navarro *Another mishap for Mr. Navarro*

- 49 Sí, probablemente tengas razón. *Yes, you're probably right.*
Tener razón: *to be right* (lit: *to have reason*)

Manolo llega a tiempo. *Manolo arrives in time.*

- 50 Yollégué hoy, justo a tiempo para el banquete. *I arrived today, just in time for the banquet.*

La señora de Ordóñez cumple años. *Mrs. Ordóñez has a birthday.*

- 51 Celebramos el veintín cumpleaños de mi mujer. *We celebrated my wife's twenty-first birthday.*
- a Veintiuno: *twenty-one* shortens to **veintín** when followed by a masculine noun.
- b The ordinal numbers (**primero, segundo** etc.) are not used very much above *twelfth* and so here we have the cardinal number **veintiuno** used.
- 52 No comprendo. ¿Qué quiere Vd. decir? *I don't understand. What do you mean?*
- a Comprendo is the **yo** form of the present tense of **comprender**: *to understand*.
- b Quiero decir: *to mean* (lit: *to want to say*)
- 53 Quiero decir que en realidad cumplió el doble. *I mean that in reality she was twice the age* (lit: *she attained the double*).
Remember **cumplir**: *to attain* used in expressions of age (L13, N3b).

Lección diecisiete

Lesson seventeen

Doña Cristina hace una visita al dentista.
Doña Cristina pays a visit to the dentist.

What happens

Part one

Doña Cristina breaks a tooth while eating some hazelnuts and has to go to the dentist's to have the tooth extracted.

Part two

Doña Cristina se rompe una muela. *Doña Cristina breaks a tooth.*

Doña Cristina explains to Ramón and Julia how she came to break her tooth. She accuses them of a lack of sympathy when any mishap befalls her.

A la mañana siguiente *On the following morning*

When Marisol learns what has happened, she suggests to her grandmother that she should go to the dentist's.

Doña Cristina pide hora. *Doña Cristina asks for an appointment.*

Doña Cristina rings up to arrange an appointment with Dr. Cerezo.

En la clínica dental *At the dental clinic*

Doña Cristina has the offending tooth taken out and arranges to return the day after tomorrow for two fillings and a bridge.

Part three

Las enfermedades de doña Mercedes *Doña Mercedes' illnesses*

Doña Mercedes, a regular visitor to her doctor, complains of a headache and a bad throat. The previous day she had spent five hours sunbathing and then drunk a litre of orangeade.

El señor Navarro tiene dolor de estómago. *Mr. Navarro has stomachache.*

Sr. Navarro tells his doctor that his stomach is getting worse and explains why he has little cause for optimism.

New words in this lesson

el caso case, fact
el cólico colic
el dentista dentist
el desinterés lack of interest
el dolor pain
el dolor de estómago stomachache
el dolor de garganta sore throat
el motivo motive, reason
el puente bridge
el riñón kidney
el vistazo glance, look

la avellana hazelnut
la boca mouth
la causa cause
la clínica clinic
la consulta consultation
la dentadura denture, teeth
la desdicha misfortune
la desventura misfortune
la extracción extraction
la hora appointment
la inyección injection
la juventud youth
la muela tooth
la nuera daughter-in-law

la sangre blood
la Sociedad health scheme, society
bendito blessed
comprensivo understanding
decimoseptimo seventeenth
dental dental
despreocupado unconcerned
duro hard
especial special
ninguno none
orgulloso proud
particular private, special
roto broken
sensato sensible
siguiente following, next
vuestro your

admitir to admit
convenir to be necessary
dar un paseo to go for a walk
decidir to decide
doler (t.e) to hurt
echar un vistazo to take a look,
have a glance
empastar to fill (teeth)
enjuagar to rinse out

entreteñer to detain
exagerar to exaggerate
extraer to extract, take out
hacer daño to hurt
mandar to order
ocurrir to happen
ocurrirse to occur
partir to crack, split
pasar to go through, experience
pedir hora to make an appointment
pertenecer to belong
romper to break
sangrar to bleed
tener cara de buenos amigos to be
in a good mood
no tener más remedio que to have
no alternative but

alguien someone
ésta this one

le to it

como si as if
para que so that, in order that

a la mañana siguiente (on) the follow-
ing morning
anteayer the day before yesterday
pasado mañana the day after
tomorrow

como si tal cosa as if it were nothing
¡Dios mío! good heavens!
es verdad it's true
no será para tanto it can't be as bad
as that
siga bien take care of yourself,
farewell

Notes

Part one

- 1 Ayer Marisol me dio unas avellanas, *Yesterday Marisol gave me some hazelnuts.*
Dio is the third person singular form of the preterite of dar. Although it is an ar verb dar has the endings of an er or ir verb in the preterite (App. 4f).
- 2 y una de ellas fue la causa de mi desdicha: *and one of them was the cause of my misfortune:*
Fue is the third person singular form of the preterite of ser (App. 4f). You will recall that fue also means *he/she/it went* (L16, N6). In fact both ser and ir have an identical preterite. This is not as confusing as it may appear as the context always makes it clear whether we are using ser or ir.
- 3 me rompí una muela. *I broke a tooth.*
When parts of the body are concerned it is usual to use the reflexive form romperse rather than just romper.
- 4 Estoy muy orgullosa de mi dentadura, *I'm very proud of my teeth.*
La dentadura refers to a set of teeth.
- 5 ya que es tan buena como en mi juventud. *since they're as good as in my youth.*
- 6 Mi familia no le dio ninguna importancia, *My family attached (gave) no importance to it,*

a le: to it

b Ninguna: no, not any is the feminine form of ninguno, which is another of those negative words which require no to precede the verb when they come after it (App. 15a). The masculine form ninguno shortens to ningún when it comes before a noun in the same way that alguno becomes algún (L6, N37a).

7 pero el caso es que pasé un día horrible, but the fact is that I spent a terrible day,

8 y esta mañana decidí ir al dentista. and this morning I decided to go to the dentist.

9 El dentista fue muy comprensivo; The dentist was very understanding;
10 primero me puso una inyección; first he gave me (put to me) an injection;

Puso is the third person singular form of the preterite of poner. As you can see it is irregular (App. 4f). Poner is one of a number of verbs which have an irregular preterite and are known as pretéritos graves. The main feature of these irregular preterites is that there are no accents on the first and third person singular forms.

11 y luego me extrajo la muela rota. and then he took out my broken tooth.

a As you know it is usual to use the definite article with parts of the body, with the indirect object pronoun (here me) put in to make it clear which person is being referred to.

b Extrajo is the third person singular form of the preterite of extraer: to take out, extract. It, too, is a pretérito grave (N10).

12 La extracción no me dolió mucho. The extraction didn't hurt me much. Dolió is the third person singular of the preterite of doler(ue): to hurt.

13 Me mandó volver dentro de dos días. He told (ordered) me to come back in two days.

Mandar: to order, command is followed directly by the infinitive of another verb (App. 10a).

14 Esta vez me empastará dos dientes; This time he'll fill two teeth for me; We have now had three words for teeth; dentadura refers to a set of teeth, diente is the general word for tooth, muela is a molar or jaw tooth.

15 también tendrá que ponerme un puente. he'll also have to fix (put) a bridge for me.

Puente is the general word for bridge and is not applied only to dentistry.

16 Cuando salí de casa del dentista Marisol y yo fuimos a sentarnos a un café. When I came out of the dentist's (house) Marisol and I went to a café to sit down.

a Salí is the yo form of the preterite of salir.

b Fuimos here is part of ir (N2).

17 Mi hijo y mi nuera fueron a dar un paseo. My son and my daughter-in-law went for a walk.

dar un paseo: to go for a walk

18 ¿Cómo pueden ser tan despreocupados! How can they be so unconcerned!

By using ser with despreocupado doña Cristina seems to be indicating that her son and daughter in law always adopt this attitude towards her complaints.

Part two

Doña Cristina se rompe una muela. Doña Cristina breaks a tooth.

19 ¡Ay, Dios mío! ¡Qué dolor! Ow, good heavens! What (a) pain!

Dios mío literally means my God. It is a commonplace expression in Spain.

20 ahora estoy sangrando. now I'm bleeding.

21 Déjame ver. Let me see.

When dejar means to let, allow it is followed directly by an infinitive (App. 10a). However, when it means to fail, omit it requires de before a following infinitive (L6, N28).

22 ¿Cómo lo hiciste? How did you do it?

Hiciste is the tú form of the preterite of hacer (App. 4f). It is another pretérito grave (N10).

23 Marisol me dio unas avellanas muy duras Marisol gave me some very hard hazelnuts

24 y cuando partí la primera me rompí la muela. and when I cracked the first one I broke my tooth.

25 no será para tanto. it can't be as bad as that (lit: it will not be for so much).

This is a very idiomatic expression.

26 Vuestro desinterés por mis desventuras es increíble. Your lack of interest in my misfortunes is incredible.

Vuestro is the word for your when referring to people you address as vosotros. Like nuestro it has a feminine form, vuestra (L14, N33).

b desinterés por: lack of interest in Remember tener interés por (L3, N14b).

27 estás exagerando. you're exaggerating.

28 Cuando tuve un cólico de riñón, When I had a kidney complaint (a colic of kidney).

Tuve is the yo form of the preterite of tener, another pretérito grave (App. 4f).

29 primero salisteis con unos amigos y luego fuisteis al teatro como si tal cosa. first you went out with some friends and then you went to the theatre as if it were nothing.

- a Salisteis and fuisteis are respectively the vosotros forms of the preterite of salir and ir (App. 4f).
- b tal cosa: *such a thing* It has the sense of something of little consequence.
- 30 Es verdad que salimos, pero tienes que admitir que no fue muy serio. *It's true that we went out, but you must admit that it wasn't very serious.*
- As you can see from salimos the nosotros form of the preterite of ir verbs is identical to the nosotros form of the present tense. You will remember the same thing happens with ar verbs (L16, N5).
- 31 Claro, tú no tuviste que pasarlo. *Of course, you didn't have to go through it.*
- a Tuviste is the tú form of the preterite of tener (N28).
- b Pasar can sometimes mean *to experience*; hence the meaning of *to enjoy for pasarlo bien* and the translation *to go through here*.

A la mañana siguiente *On the following morning*

- 32 A la mañana siguiente *(On) the following morning*
In English we may leave out *on* but you should always include *a* in the Spanish expression. Likewise *al día siguiente*: *(on) the following day*.
- 33 No tienes cara de buenos amigos. *You don't look as if you're in a good mood* (lit: *you haven't got face of good friends*).
This is another very idiomatic expression.
- 34 Fueron tus benditas avellanas. *It was (they were) your blessed hazelnuts.*
- 35 ¿Te duele mucho? *Does it hurt (you) a lot?*
- 36 Menos mal que a alguien se le ocurre algo sensato. *Just as well that something sensible occurs to someone.*
- a menos mal: *just as well* (lit: *less bad*)
- b Se is the reflexive pronoun belonging to ocurrirse: *to occur*. Le, not translated here, refers to *alguien*: *to someone*.
- c sensato: *sensible* Do not confuse it with sensible: *sensitive* (L13, N17).

Doña Cristina pide hora. *Doña Cristina asks for an appointment.*

- 37 Clínica del doctor Cerezo. *Dr. Cerezo's clinic.*
- 38 quisiera hora para hoy. *I'd like an appointment for today.*
Notice that *hora*: *hour*, *time* is used for *appointment*.
- 39 ¿Es una consulta particular o pertenece Vd. a la Sociedad? *Is it a private consultation or do you belong to the health scheme?*
The *yo* form of the present tense of pertenecer: *to belong* is *pertenezco*.
- 40 En ese caso puede Vd. venir a las doce treinta. *In that case you can come at twelve thirty.*

En la clínica dental *At the dental clinic*

- 41 ¿Qué le ocurre? *What's the trouble (what happens to you)?*
- 42 Anteayer me rompí una muela, doctor. *The day before yesterday I broke a tooth, doctor.*
- 43 Me duele bastante. *It hurts (me) somewhat.*
- 44 Vamos a echar un vistazo... *Let's have a glance...*
- 45 Temo que no tendré más remedio que extraérsela. *I'm afraid I shall have no alternative but to take it out for you.*
- a No tener más remedio que + infinitive: *to have no alternative but*
- b Notice that in speech the *s* of más has disappeared. This often occurs in Spanish when *s* precedes a word beginning with *r*.
- c Remember the accent that has to be placed on an infinitive when two object pronouns are attached to it (App. 14c).
- 46 Por favor, no me haga mucho daño. *Please, don't cause (make) me much pain.*
- 47 No, le pondré una inyección y verá como no siente nada... *No, I'll give you an injection and you'll see how you'll feel nothing...*
- Pondré is the *yo* form of the future tense of poner (App. 4e).
- 48 Ya está. *There we are.*
This is a useful idiomatic phrase indicating that something has been successfully completed.
- 49 Ahora enjuáguese la boca. *Now rinse out your mouth,*
enjuagar: *to rinse out* The reflexive form of the verb is used with a part of the body (N3). You will remember that it is normal to use the definite article with parts of the body rather than the possessive adjective (App. 12a).
- 50 Hay un poco de sangre. *There's a little blood.*
- 51 Conviene que vuelva pasado mañana *It's necessary for you to come back (that you come back) the day after tomorrow*
Conviene que: *it's necessary that* is followed by the subjunctive (App. 9m).
- 52 para que le empaste esos dos dientes y le ponga un puente. *for me to (in order that I) fill those two teeth and fix a bridge for you.*
- Para que: *in order that, so that* is another conjunction which is followed by the subjunctive (App. 9o).
- 53 No quiero entretenerle más. *I don't want to detain you any longer.*
no...más: *no longer, no more*
- 54 Hasta pasado mañana. *I'll see you (until) the day after tomorrow.*
- 55 Adiós, siga bien, señora. *Good bye, take care of yourself, madam.*
Siga is the Vd. command form of seguir(i): *to follow, continue*. Siga bien is a commonly used expression, especially for older people.

Part three

Las enfermedades de doña Mercedes *Doña Mercedes' illnesses*

- 56 Me siento muy mal. *I feel very ill.*
 57 ¿Hizo Vd. algo especial ayer? *Did you do anything special yesterday?*
 Hizo is the third person singular form of the preterite of *hacer* (App. 4f).
 58 Tomé el sol durante cinco horas *I sunbathed for five hours*
 Durante: *during* is often used to translate for when referring to a period of time in which something was done.

El señor Navarro tiene dolor de estómago. *Mr. Navarro has a stomachache.*

- 59 No tengo motivos para estar optimista. *I have no reason(s) for being optimistic.*

Lección dieciocho Lesson eighteen

Hablando de negocios Talking about business

What happens

Part one

Don Felipe dictates a letter to a business colleague, don Ignacio Echevarría, in Bilbao, who is coming to Barcelona for the International Trade Fair held in June every year. He invites him to visit his factory and also to come to his house for a good meal.

Part two

El señor Echevarría en Barcelona *Mr. Echevarría in Barcelona*

Sr. Echevarría visits don Felipe at his office and they discuss the trade fair. For the time being Sr. Echevarría will not be buying anything from don Felipe.

Rápida visita a la fábrica *A quick visit to the factory*

Don Felipe shows Sr. Echevarría round the factory.

Almuerzo en casa de don Felipe *Lunch at don Felipe's*

Doña María greets Sr. Echevarría when he arrives for lunch.

Diego se ocupa en poner la mesa. *Diego is busy laying the table.*

Diego lays the table for lunch under the guidance of doña María. She whets his appetite by telling him what they're going to eat.

Part three

La paciente peligrosa *The dangerous patient*

Marta warns the dentist that if he hurts her she will bite him.

New words in this lesson

el acuerdo agreement
 el almacén store, warehouse
 el aperitivo aperitif
 el cajón drawer
 el cambio change
 el cochinito sucking pig
 el colega colleague
 los cubiertos cutlery
 el cuchillo knife
 el dño pain
 el detalle detail
 el ejemplo example
 el estante shelf
 el Japón Japan
 el mantel tablecloth
 el material material
 el pabellón pavilion
 el/a paciente patient
 el plato plate
 el tejido fabric, textile
 el telar loom
 el tenedor fork

la calidad quality
 la cuchara spoon
 la delicia delight
 la feria trade fair
 la forma form, shape
 la impresión impression
 la instalación installation
 la lana wool
 la langosta lobster
 la maquinaria machinery
 la ocasión occasion, opportunity
 la oferta offer
 la opinión opinion
 la oportunidad opportunity, chance
 la propuesta proposal

la sección section
 la servilleta napkin
 la sociedad anónima (S.A) limited company (Ltd.)
 la vuelta stroll
 la zarzuela soup

británico British
 de arriba upper
 décimotercio eighteenth
 de la derecha on the right (adj.)
 de la izquierda on the left (adj.)
 distinguido distinguished
 eficiente efficient
 escocés Scots, Scottish
 excepcional exceptional
 extraordinario extraordinary
 irlandés Irish
 peligroso dangerous
 suculento succulent

apetecer to fancy
 colocar to place, put
 comunicar to communicate
 darse una vuelta to go round (something), take a stroll
 detenerse to stop
 dictar to dictate
 discutir to discuss
 garantizar to guarantee
 hacer pasar to show in
 importar to import
 llegar a un acuerdo to reach an agreement
 morder(ue) to bite
 ocuparse to be busy
 oler(ue) to smell
 pasar to enter

pasarse to come round, come along
poner la mesa to lay, set the table
quejarse to complain
referirse (ie) to refer to
resultar to turn out
sugerir (ie) to suggest
tener cuidado to be careful, take
care
tener gusto en to be pleased to
tratar to address, call
tutear to call someone "tú"

ésta here, this (city)
lo que what, that which

con referencia a with reference to
en cuanto as soon as

Notes

Part one

- 1 Dígame, don Felipe. *Yes, don Felipe.*
 - 2 Haga el favor de subir, señorita Moreno. *Please come up, Miss Moreno.*
 - 3 Quiero dictarle una carta. *I want to dictate a letter to you.*
 - 4 ¡Ah! Búsqueme la dirección de mi colega don Ignacio Echevarría de Bilbao. *Ah! Look for the address for me of my colleague Don Ignacio Echevarría of Bilbao.*
- Verbs ending in car, like buscar, change the c to qu when followed by e (App. 5a).
- 5 Inmediatamente subo. *I'll come up immediately.*
Note carefully the spelling of inmediatamente.
 - 6 Almacén de Tejidos, S.A. *Almacén de Tejidos Co. Ltd.*
 - a This is the name of Sr. Echevarría's firm. Un almacén is a store or warehouse and el tejido: fabric, textile.
 - b S.A. stands for sociedad anónima which is the equivalent of Co. Ltd. or Inc. in English.
 - 7 Pío Baroja, 19-21 19-21, Pío Baroja
The street is named after the famous Spanish novelist Pío Baroja (1872-1957) who came from the Basque country.
 - 8 Barcelona, 4/6/1973 *Barcelona, four(th) of the sixth (of) 1973*
Notice how the date is expressed only in figures; cuatro del seis de mil novecientos setenta y tres.
 - 9 Distinguido señor: *Dear (Distinguished) sir:*

ahora mismo directly, at once
arriba up
con calma calmly
de este modo in this way
de su agrado to your liking
en buena forma fit, in good shape
en fin anyway
inmediatamente immediately
más most

le saluda atentamente yours
sincerely
mejor aún better still
sin más que without anything else to

dieciocho eighteen
1º de los corrientes 1st inst.

This is a typical way of opening a formal letter. To a lady one would of course write Distinguida Sra./Srta.

- 10 Con referencia a su carta del 1º de los corrientes, *With reference to your letter of the first inst.,*
Primero when written numerically is 1º.
- 11 quisiera decirle que me parece bien su propuesta. *I'd like to tell you that your proposal seems all right to me.*
- 12 Tenga la bondad de telefonarme en cuanto llegue a ésta, la próxima semana, para la Feria Internacional. *Please telephone me as soon as you arrive here, next week, for the International Fair.*
- a En cuanto: as soon as, a conjunction of time like cuando and hasta que, is followed by the subjunctive when referring to future time (App. 9g).
- b ésta: this It is quite common to use ésta to mean here in letters when referring to the place from which you are writing. The feminine form is used as it stands for la ciudad de Barcelona.
- 13 sugiero que se pase por mi oficina. *I suggest that you come along to my office.*
Sugerir (ie): to suggest is followed by the subjunctive (App. 9i).
- 14 Luego, nos daremos una vuelta por la fábrica, para que vea el material, que espero sea de su agrado. *Then, we'll take a stroll round the factory for you to see the material, which I hope will be to your liking.*
- a dar una vuelta por: to (take a) stroll round, tour, go round
- b Remember the use of the subjunctive after para que (L17, N52).
- c Espero sea de su agrado is a very useful phrase to remember for business letters.
- 15 De este modo, podremos discutir con calma su oferta y otros detalles, *In this way, we shall be able to discuss your offer and other details, calmly,*
De is always used to mean in with both modo and manera: way, manner, means.
- 16 y llegar a un acuerdo en lo que se refiere al precio. *and come to an agreement concerning the price (on what refers to the price).*
lo que: what, that which when referring to something not specific.
- 17 Mejor aún. Pásese por casa. *Better still. Come to my house.*
Pásese Just like object pronouns, reflexive pronouns are attached to the end of the command forms of verbs, unless the command is negative (App. 6c).
- 18 Le garantizo un suculento almuerzo a la vasca. *I guarantee you a succulent Basque (style) lunch.*
- 19 Le diré que mi mujer es una excelente cocinera. *I'll tell you that my wife is an excellent cook.*
Diré is the yo form of the future tense of decir. As you can see it is irregular. The future tense here gives more emphasis to don Felipe's statement.

- 20 Sin más que comunicarle. *Without more to communicate to you.*
This is a standard way of bringing a letter to a close.
- 21 y deseando verle pronto por aquí. *and looking forward to seeing you here soon.*
- 22 Le saluda atentamente Felipe Romero *Yours sincerely, Felipe Romero*
(lit: *Felipe Romero greets you politely*)

Part two

El señor Echevarría en Barcelona *Mr. Echevarria in Barcelona*

- 23 Hágame pasar, por favor. *Show him in, please.*
- 24 Me alegro de verle. *I'm pleased to see you.*
Alegrarse requires de before a following infinitive (L14, N23a). This applies to many verbs of emotion (App. 10c).
- 25 Siéntese. *Sit down.*
This is the Vd. command form of sentarse. Note the position of the reflexive pronoun (N17).
- 26 Parece Vd. en buena forma. *You seem in good shape.*
- 27 No puedo quejarme. *I can't complain.*
quejarse: *to complain*
- 28 ¿Qué le apetece tomar? *What do you fancy having?*
- 29 Parece un poco temprano, pero en fin, tomaré un jerez. *It seems a little early, but anyway (in end), I'll have a sherry.*
- 30 A propósito, ¿qué le parece si nos tuteamos? *By the way, what do you think about our calling each other 'tú'?*
tutear: *to call somebody 'tú'*
- 31 Dime, Ignacio. *Tell me, Ignacio.*
Dí is the tú command form of decir (App. 4b). It is one of a number of verbs that have an irregular tú command form.
- 32 ¿Te diste una vuelta por la Feria? *Did you stroll around the Fair?*
Diste is the tú form of the preterite of dar (App. 4f).
- 33 Creo que dijiste algo de eso por teléfono. *I think you said something about that on the phone.*
Dijiste is the tú form of the preterite of decir (App. 4f). It is another pretérito grave. With verbs like decir and extraer (L17, N11b) which have j before the preterite ending, the third person plural ending is eron (not ieron), e.g. dijeron; extrajeron; trajeron (App. 4f).
- 34 Ayer pasé por allí para echarle un vistazo. *Yesterday I went over there to have a look at it.*
Por allí can mean *through there, over there, that way* etc. just as *por aquí* means *this way, around here*.
- 35 ¿Qué impresión tienes? *What's your impression?*

- 36 Me pareció extraordinaria. *I found it (it seemed to me) extraordinary.*
- 37 Me alegro mucho de haber tenido oportunidad de visitarla. *I'm very glad to have had the opportunity of visiting it.*
- 38 Yo estuve allí el otro día. *I was there the other day.*
Estuve is the yo form of the preterite of estar (App. 4f), another pretérito grave.
- 39 En mi opinión el pabellón más interesante es el del Japón. *In my opinion the most interesting pavilion is Japan's (the one of Japan).*
a El de: *the one of* has to be used in Spanish where in English we use a noun with an apostrophe s.
- b The names of most countries are feminine in Spanish. However there are some masculine ones and they are used with the definite article *el*, as here with *el Japón*.
- 40 aunque todos me hicieron buena impresión. *although they all made a good impression on me.*
- 41 Yo me detuve sobre todo en los pabellones de los Estados Unidos y de Gran Bretaña. *I stopped especially in the pavilions of the United States and of Great Britain.*
Me detuve is the yo form of the preterite of detenerse: *to stop* which follows the pattern outlined for tener in all tenses (App. 4f).
- 42 Los tejidos británicos me parecieron de primera calidad; *The British fabrics seemed to me of first (class) quality;*
- 43 sobre todo las lanas escocesas e irlandesas. *especially the Scottish and Irish wools.*
- 44 A mí, en cambio, lo que me interesó más, fue la maquinaria de los EE. UU. Es excepcional. *For me, on the other hand, what interested me most, was the machinery from the United States. It's exceptional.*
a Here we have another use of *lo que* (N16), used here as Sr. Echevarría does not specify a particular object until later in the sentence.
- b EE.UU. is the normal abbreviation for Estados Unidos.
- 45 Tendrás ocasión de ver algunos ejemplos cuando nos demos una vuelta por la fábrica. *You'll have (a) chance to see some examples when we go round the factory,*
- 46 ya que el año pasado importamos bastante material de ese país. *since last year we imported quite a lot of material from that country.*
- 47 Tendré mucho gusto en hacerlo. *I shall have great pleasure in doing so,*
Tener gusto requires en before a following infinitive (App. 10d).
- 48 pero como ya te dije, ha habido un cambio de planes *but as I told you already, there has been a change of plans*
a Dije is the yo form of the preterite of decir (App. 4f).
- b ha habido: *there has been*. This is the perfect tense form of *hay*: *there is, there are*.

Rápida visita a la fábrica *A quick visit to the factory*

- 49 Las instalaciones son magníficas. *The installations are magnificent.*
 50 Ven por aquí. Vamos a pasar a esta sección. *Come this way. Let's pass on to this section.*
 Ven is the tú command form of *venir* (App. 4b). It is irregular.
 51 estos telares son nuevos. *these looms are new.*
 52 Los compramos a Inglaterra hace seis meses *We bought them from England six months ago*
 You can use a with *comprar* to indicate where you bought something from.
 53 Parecen muy eficientes. *They seem very efficient.*

Almuerzo en casa de don Felipe *Lunch at don Felipe's*

- 54 en casa de don Felipe: *at don Felipe's (house)*
 55 Por favor, Ignacio, tútame. *Please, Ignacio, call me 'tú'.*
 56 porque siempre me resulta difícil tratar de Vd. a los amigos. *because I always find it difficult (it always turns out difficult for me) to address friends as Vd.*
 57 Pasad al comedor y sentaos. *Come into the dining room and sit down.*
 a As she is using the vosotros commands *pasad* and *sentaos*, doña María is clearly talking to her husband and their guest.
 b With reflexive verbs the d of the vosotros command (e.g. *sentad*) is removed before the reflexive pronoun *os* is added. Hence *sentad* becomes *sentaos* (App. 6d).
 58 Ahora mismo os sirvo unos aperitivos. *I'll serve you some aperitifs directly.*
 ahora mismo: *directly, at once, right away*

Diego se ocupa en poner la mesa. *Diego is busy laying the table.*

- 59 Ocuparse: *to be busy, occupy oneself*, requires en before a following infinitive (App. 10d).
 60 ya puse el mantel y las servilletas. *I(ve) already laid the tablecloth and the napkins.*
 Puse is the yo form of the preterite of *poner* (App. 4f), which is yet another *pretérito* grave.
 61 ¿Qué se hace ahora? *What's to be done (what does one do) now?*
 62 Ahora pon los platos. *Now put (out) the plates.*
 Pon is the tú command form of *poner*. It is irregular.
 63 Los encontrarás en el estante de la derecha. *You'll find them on the shelf on the right.*
 64 De acuerdo. *All right. (Agreed)*

- 65 Coloca el tenedor a la izquierda del plato, y la cuchara y el cuchillo a la derecha. *Place the fork to the left of the plate, and the spoon and the knife to the right.*
 66 Huele que es una delicia. *It smells delightful (that it is a delight).*
 Huele is the third person singular form of the present tense of *oler(ue)*: *to smell*. In those parts of the verb where the radical change takes place an h is added at the beginning of the word.
 67 Primero tomaremos una zarzuela de mariscos, langosta con mayonesa, y luego, cochinito asado con ensalada. *First we'll have a shellfish soup, lobster with mayonnaise, and then, roast sucking pig with salad.*
 68 Para mí ración doble de todo. *For me a double portion of everything.*

Part three

La paciente peligrosa *The dangerous patient*

- 69 Me duele mucho una muela de arriba. *An upper jaw tooth is hurting me a lot.*
 arriba: *up* de arriba: *upper*
 70 Tenga cuidado. *Be careful.*
 Tener cuidado: *to be careful, take care*
 71 Si me hace daño le morderé. *If you hurt me I'll bite you.*

Lección diecinueve Lesson nineteen

Vuelo a Barcelona Flying to Barcelona

What happens

Part one

The Muñoz family are now on their way by air to Barcelona. Don Ramón knows Catalonia well as he used to spend his holidays there when he was young. As a Castilian, however, he naturally prefers Madrid.

Part two

Dirigiéndose al avión *Making their way to the plane*

The final announcement for their flight from Málaga to Barcelona is heard over the loudspeaker.

El despegue *The take off*

A stewardess welcomes the passengers and gives them some flight information plus the usual instructions for take off procedure.

Durante el vuelo *During the flight*

Marisol complains about feeling sick but everyone else finds the flight very comfortable. The pilot speaks to the passengers and finally the stewardess gives instructions about landing procedure.

Encuentro con don Felipe *Meeting don Felipe*

D. Felipe has come to Barcelona airport to meet his relations. Doña María has stayed at home preparing dinner and Diego has been unable to make it.

Part three

Don Rafael y don Paco discuten un accidente aéreo. *Don Rafael and don Paco discuss an air accident.*

D. Paco and his wife haven't flown for more than three years since they had an accident on a flight.

En el aeropuerto de México *At Mexico airport*

D. Tomás learns that the official time for the arrival of the flight from Madrid is very different from the actual time, which varies considerably.

New words in this lesson

el accidente accident
el ambiente atmosphere
el aparato aircraft
el asiento seat
el aterrizaje landing
el aviso announcement, notice
el capitán captain
el caramelo sweet
el cinturón de seguridad safety belt,
seat belt
el curso course
el despegue take off
el gusto taste
el metro metre
el motor engine
el oído ear
el oro gold
el pasajero passenger
el piloto pilot
el tráfico traffic

la altura height, altitude
la azafata stewardess, air hostess
la cena dinner, supper
la conversación conversation
la duración duration
la escala stop(over)
la madrugada early morning, dawn
la metrópoli metropolis
la naturaleza nature
la patria country, motherland
la región region
la seguridad safety
la tierra land

aéreo aerial
bienvenido welcome
castellano Castilian
décimonoventa nineteenth
industrializado industrialized
mareado sick

relajante relaxing
rico rich
valiente brave, valiant

abrocharse to fasten
acabarse to end, come to an end
arreglar to manage, arrange
caber to fit in, be room for
callarse to be quiet, shut up
complacerse en to be happy to,
take pleasure in
conservar to preserve, retain
despegar to take off
disolverse(ue) to dissolve
escuchar to listen to
mantenerse to remain
moverse(ue) to move
perder(ie) to waste (time)
preparar to prepare
progresar to progress
soler(ue) to be accustomed to,
used to
tomar tierra to touch down, land
zumar to throb, buzz

contigo with you
debido a owing to
entre between

Notes

Part one

- 1 Ya se acabaron nuestras vacaciones en la Costa del Sol. *Our holidays on the Costa del Sol came to an end.*
- 2 Aunque sea triste admitirlo, *Even though it be sad to admit (it),* The subjunctive is used after aunque when it has the sense of *even if, even though* (App. 9p).
- 3 todo lo bueno tiene fin. *all good things come to an end* (lit: *everything good has an end*).
todo lo bueno: *everything good (all the good)* When an adjective is used as a noun the neuter article *lo* is used with it instead of *el* or *la*.
- 4 Ahora volamos con destino a Barcelona: *Now we're flying to Barcelona (with destination Barcelona):*
- 5 de la que Cervantes dijo que era "la patria de los valientes". *of which Cervantes said that it was "the country of the brave".*

aunque although; even if, even though

ése that (one)

lo the

a bordo on board, aboard
apenas scarcely, hardly
bastante quite a bit
completamente completely
de todos modos anyway, in any case
efectivamente indeed
en apariencia in appearance
en breve shortly
menos least
nada nothing
oficialmente officially
perfectamente perfectly

bienvenidos a bordo welcome aboard

el tiempo es oro time is gold
en la práctica in practice
¡qué se le va a hacer! what's to be done about it
supongo que sí I suppose so
todo lo bueno tiene fin all good things come to an end

- a la que: *which* You will often come across the forms *el que, la que, los que, las que* used instead of *que: which, who, that*. They are usually used when *que* alone might be confusing and *el, la, los, las* can make clear exactly what is referred to (App. 14h).
- b *era: was* This is the third person singular form of the imperfect tense of *ser* (App. 4g). The imperfect is another past tense but differs greatly in use from the preterite and the perfect as you will see in this and succeeding lessons. At this stage it is enough to say that while the preterite describes single, completed actions in the past, the imperfect refers to continuous or repeated actions in the past.
Hence: *dijo: he said* (one completed action)
era: it was (a continuous state of affairs over an indefinite period of time)
- c *La patria* means *country* in the sense of *motherland*.
- 6 *En mi juventud viajaba mucho a Cataluña.* *In my youth I used to travel a lot to Catalonia.*
- a *Viajaba* is the *yo* form of the imperfect of *viajar*. To form the imperfect of an *ar* verb you replace the *ar* with the following endings; *aba; abas; aba; ábamos; abais; aban* (App. 11h). Note the accent on the *nosotros* form. There are no irregular *ar* verbs where the imperfect tense is concerned.
- b *Viajaba* might have been translated here as *I travelled* or *I would travel* as well as *I used to travel*. The point is that it describes an action which was repeated and so we must use the imperfect tense.
- 7 *Me gustaba pasar mis vacaciones allí.* *I liked to spend my holidays there.* *Me gustaba* is the imperfect form of *me gusta*. D. Ramón is not referring here to something he liked to do once and once only, but rather to something he liked to do over a long, indefinite period.
- 8 *Cataluña es la región más industrializada de España.* *Catalonia is the most industrialized region in Spain.*
Following a superlative (L14, N38a) *in* is translated by *de* in Spanish.
- 9 *Es una tierra muy rica.* *It's a very rich land.*
Tierra is the general word for *land, earth* while *terreno* (L14, N12) refers specifically to the soil.
- 10 *Nada le falta.* *It lacks for nothing* (lit: *Nothing is lacking to it*).
Notice that when *nada* comes before a verb you do not need to use *no* as well. This sentence could also have been written: *no le falta nada.*
- 11 *La naturaleza ha sido muy generosa con ella.* *Nature has been very generous to (with) her.*
Remember that the definite article is used with nouns used in a general sense like *la naturaleza*.
- 12 *Pero yo soy castellano* *But I'm Castilian*

D. Ramón comes from *Castilla: Castile*, the central part of Spain. It is the language of this part of the country, known as *castellano*, which is the officially recognised standard form of Spanish.

- 13 *Madrid con su alegría y su ambiente simpático.* *Madrid with its gaiety and friendly atmosphere.*
Ambiente is not used for *atmosphere* in the scientific sense of the word.
- 14 *Madrid es, en apariencia, la ciudad menos española de España.* *Madrid is, in appearance, the least Spanish city in Spain.*
Here again we have *de* meaning *in* after a superlative (N8).
- 15 *Es una moderna metrópoli donde se ha conservado el gusto por la conversación.* *It's a modern metropolis where the taste for conversation has been preserved (has preserved itself).*
It is very common in Spanish to use a reflexive form when in English we use *to be* and a past participle, e.g. *se conserva: is preserved; se ha conservado: has been preserved.*
- 16 *Y aunque los madrileños admiten que "el tiempo es oro", se complacen en perderlo.* *And although the natives of Madrid admit that "time is gold", they are happy to waste it.*
- a You will notice that when *aunque* means *although* it is not followed by the subjunctive (N2).
- b *Complacerse: to be happy, take pleasure* requires *en* before a following infinitive.

Part two

Dirigiéndose al avión *Making their way to the plane*

- 17 *Atención, señores pasajeros.* *Attention, ladies and gentlemen (passengers).*
- 18 *Este es el último aviso del vuelo IB 652 Málaga-Barcelona.* *This is the last announcement of flight IB 652 Málaga-Barcelona.*
- 19 *Por favor, dirijanse al aparato.* *Please, proceed to the aircraft.*
Remember that verbs ending in *gir* change *g* to *j* before *a* and *o*. (L14, N9d).
- El despegue *The take off*
- 20 *Azafata* *Stewardess*
- 21 *Bienvenidos a bordo, señoras y caballeros.* *Welcome aboard, ladies and gentlemen.*
The stewardess uses the masculine form *bienvenidos* as she is addressing a mixed group of people.
- 22 *En breve despegaremos del aeropuerto de Málaga.* *We shall shortly be taking off from Málaga airport.*

- 23 El vuelo tendrá una duración de dos horas, cincuenta minutos, con escala en Valencia. *The flight will take (have a duration of) two hours, fifty minutes with a stop in Valencia.*
Escala is used by airlines, railways etc. to indicate a stop en route. Sin escala will indicate a non-stop journey.
- 24 Abróchense los cinturones de seguridad y no fumen. *Fasten your safety belts and do not smoke.*

Durante el vuelo *During the flight*

- 25 estoy un poco mareada y me zumban mucho los oídos. *I feel (am) a little sick and my ears are buzzing.*
a You will recall that with parts of the body it is customary to use the definite article rather than the possessive adjective, with a pronoun used to show exactly which person is being referred to.
b El oído is the inner ear while la oreja (L9, N33c) is the outer, visible ear.
- 26 Toma este caramelo y déjalo que se disuelva en la boca. *Take this sweet and let it dissolve in your mouth.*
Remember that the subjunctive is used after *dejar*: to allow, let (L13, N45a).
- 27 Este aparato apenas parece moverse. *This aircraft scarcely seems to be moving.*
Moverse is used to describe the act of something or someone being in motion. If, however, you cause something or someone else to move you must use *mover* without the reflexive pronoun.
- 28 Efectivamente. A mí también me resulta un viaje muy cómodo y relajante. *Indeed. For me too it's turning out (to be) a very comfortable, relaxing journey.*
A mí used in addition to me and coming first in the sentence gives greater emphasis to the feeling or opinion you are expressing (App. 14c).
- 29 Callaos, queréis. Está hablando el piloto. *Be quiet, will you. The pilot is speaking.*
Callaos is the vosotros command form of *callarse*: to be quiet (L18, N57b).
- 30 les habla el capitán Viñuela. *Captain Viñuela is speaking to you.*
- 31 El vuelo sigue su curso normal. *The flight is following its normal course.*
- 32 Volamos a una altura de 5.000 metros. *We're flying at a height of 5,000 metres.*
- 33 Supongo que sí, ya que tiene la llegada a las diez menos cuarto. *I suppose so, as its arrival time is (lit: it has the arrival time) at a quarter to ten.*
- 34 Dentro de unos minutos tomaremos tierra en el aeropuerto del Prat. *In a few minutes we shall touch down at Prat airport.*

- 35 Manténganse en su asiento hasta que el aparato haya parado completamente los motores. *Remain in your seat(s) until the aircraft has stopped its engines completely.*
a Mantenerse: to remain follows the pattern of *tener* in all tenses (App. 4a).
b The singular form *asiento* is used, it being assumed that each passenger is occupying one seat.
c Haya parado is the third person singular form of the perfect subjunctive, i.e. the present subjunctive of *haber* plus the past participle. It is used here after *hasta que* (App. 9g).

Encuentro con don Felipe *Meeting don Felipe*

- 36 Ya creía que no llegabais. *I was thinking you were not coming.*
a Creía is the yo form of the imperfect of *creer*: to think, believe. To form the imperfect tense of an er or ir verb you replace the er and ir endings with ía; ías; íamos; íais; ían; ían; (App. 1h). Ser (N5b) has an irregular imperfect.
b Llegabais is the vosotros form of the imperfect of *llegar* (N6a).
- 37 Veníamos a la hora, pero, debido al tráfico aéreo, no pudimos aterrizar antes. *We were (coming) on time, but, due to the air traffic, we could not land before.*
a Veníamos is the nosotros form of the imperfect of *venir* (N36a).
b Pudimos is the nosotros form of the preterite of *poder*: to be able. It is a *préterito grave* (App. 4f).
c This sentence should help you to understand the basic difference between the preterite and the imperfect (N5b). The imperfect *veníamos* describes the continuous action of being on time but the sudden single event of not being able to land is described by the preterite *pudimos*.
- 38 Lo que importa es que hayáis llegado y estéis bien. *What matters is that you have arrived and are well.*
a The subjunctive forms *hayáis llegado* (N35c) and *estéis* are used after the impersonal expression *lo que importa es que* (App. 9l).
b Remember *lo que*: what (L18, N16).
- 39 Esperaba verlos en el aeropuerto contigo. *I was hoping to see them at the airport with you.*
a Esperaba is the yo form of the imperfect of *esperar* (N6a).
b After a preposition the usual word for *you* (referring to someone addressed as tú) is *ti*. However, with *con* we have this special form contigo. Remember conmigo: with me (L9, N15c).
- 40 Ya sabéis cómo es María. *You know what María is like.*
- 41 Se quedó en casa preparando la cena. *She stayed at home preparing dinner.*

42. Diego tenía trabajo pero prometió estar en el aeropuerto a las nueve y media. *Diego had work (to do) but promised to be at the airport at half past nine.*
 a Tenía is the third person singular form of the imperfect of **tener** (N36a).
 b The imperfect **tenía** describes the continuous period over which Diego was, and seemingly still is, busy. During this period he promised to go to the airport which is one single action completed as soon as he had made the promise. Hence the preterite **prometió**.
 43. Parece que no pudo arreglarlo. *It seems that he couldn't manage it.*
Pudo is the third person singular form of the preterite of **poder** (N37b).
 44. ¡Qué se le va a hacer! *What's to be done about it!*
 45. De todos modos no es problema. *Anyway it's not a problem.*
 46. cabremos todos perfectamente. *we'll all fit in perfectly.*
Cabremos is the **nosotros** form of the future of **caber** (App. 4e). It is a curious verb meaning *to fit in, be room for*; e.g. **caben dos maletas**: *there's room for two cases*.
 47. Debe haber progresado mucho desde que estuvimos aquí. *It must have progressed a lot since we were here.*

Part three

Don Rafael y don Paco discuten un accidente aéreo. *Don Rafael and don Paco discuss an air accident.*

48. ¿Cuánto tiempo hacía que no volabas? *How long was it since you had not flown?*
 You will recall the use of **hace...que** referring to time (L6, N10). By using the imperfect form **hacía** with the imperfect form of the other verb involved, here **volabas**, you can now use this construction to express events further back in past time. Other examples:
Hacía dos horas que esperaba aquí. *I'd been waiting here for two hours.*
Hacía tres años que era médico. *He'd been a doctor for three years.*
 49. **Hacía más de tres años.** *It was more than three years.*
 50. **Sí, solíamos volar bastante.** *Yes, we used to fly quite a bit.*
Solíamos: *we used to, were accustomed to* is the **nosotros** form of the imperfect of **sol(er) (ue)**: *to be used to, accustomed to* which is used to stress that someone habitually does a particular thing. As you can see **sol(er)** is followed directly by the infinitive (App. 10a).

En el aeropuerto de Méjico *At Mexico airport*

51. ¿Es esa la hora oficial de aterrizaje? *Is that the official landing time?*
 52. Pues...entre las once de la noche y las cuatro de la madrugada. *Well... between eleven p.m. and four a.m.*
De la madrugada is used for *a.m.*, instead of *de la mañana*, for the early hours of the morning. **La madrugada** means *dawn*.

Lección veinte Lesson twenty

De compras en Barcelona Shopping in Barcelona

What happens

Part one

Doña María tells us a little about herself. Although she feels that doña Julia has been very fortunate to have so many opportunities for travelling, she is not really envious. She is quite satisfied with her life as a housewife. She is keen on cooking and likes watching television. Diego is her main worry as she considers him to be an irresponsible driver.

Part two

¿Qué compramos? *What shall we buy?*

Doña María and doña Julia plan a shopping spree. They both have to buy clothes and decide to go to the big stores in the centre of the city.

En los grandes almacenes *In the big department stores*

Doña Julia is directed by a shop assistant to the hosiery department where she buys stockings and socks.

En la zapatería *In the shoe shop*

Doña María buys a pair of patent leather shoes which she has seen in the shop window.

Merendando *Having tea*

The two ladies take a break from their shopping and go to a café for tea. Doña Julia still has quite a bit more shopping to do.

Part three

Vacaciones tranquilas *Quiet holidays*

Doña Luisa tells Doña Mercedes about the quiet seaside holiday she and her family had.

Curiosa ocupación *Strange occupation*

Domingo finds it strange that Alberto should have gone to the station to look at the trains.

Más sobre negocios *More about business*

Here we have another example of a business letter in Spanish.

el ante suede
el calcetín sock
el centro centre, city centre
el charol patent leather
el escaparate shop window
el gran almacén department store
el guante glove
el horario timetable
el invierno winter
el limón lemon
el pastel cake
el quehacer chore, task
el sombrero hat
el suéter sweater
el tacón heel (of shoe)
el té tea
el tono shade, tone
el trozo slice

el ama de casa housewife
la blusa blouse
la bonificación discount
la camarera waitress
la camisa shirt
la cocina cooking
las compras shopping
la chaqueta jacket
la dependienta shop assistant
la distracción hobby, pastime
la escalera mecánica escalator
la factura invoice, bill
la falda skirt
la gabardina raincoat
la media stocking
la mercancía goods, merchandise
la ocupación occupation
la pasta sweet biscuit
la piel leather, skin
la plaza square
la preocupación worry, concern
la ropa interior underwear
la tarta tart, flan, gateau
la zapatería shoe shop

afortunado fortunate
agotador exhausting
atento polite
azul marino navy blue
bajo low

bastante a fair amount of
casero home, domestic
claro light, pale
conveniente convenient
curioso strange, curious
de piña pineapple
doméstico domestic
fino fine
fuerte strong
granate maroon
irresponsable irresponsible
marrón dark brown
mayor greater, greatest
oscuro dark
pobre poor
satisfecho satisfied, pleased
vigésimo twentieth
acompañar to accompany
acusar to acknowledge
adjuntar to enclose
agradecer to thank
calzar to take, wear (of shoes)
casarse con to get married to
considerar to consider
criarse to be brought up
dedicar to devote, dedicate
dirigir to direct
importar to bother, worry
ir de compras to go shopping
llevarse to take (away), have
merendar (ie) to have tea, a snack,
a picnic
probarse (ue) to try on
volver (ue) a to (do) again
aquel that (one)
lo mejor the best thing
yo mismo I myself
junto a next to
aún still
principalmente mainly, principally,
mostly
al contado cash
creo que sí I think so
Muy Sres. míos Dear Sirs
ni mucho menos not much less
por supuesto of course
¡ya! oh, yes!

- 1 Volveré a presentarme yo misma. *I myself will introduce myself again.*
a Volver a followed by an infinitive means *to do something again*.
- b Yo misma So far we have only seen doña María through the eyes of her husband don Felipe. She now introduces herself to us, giving emphasis to the fact that she is doing it herself by using *misma* with *yo* and by placing *yo misma* at the end of the sentence. *Mismo: self* may be used with any of the subject pronouns for the sake of emphasis.
- 2 Nací y me crié en Bilbao. *I was born and brought up in Bilbao.*
criar: *to bring up* criarse: *to be brought up*
- 3 Viví allí hasta que me casé con Felipe. *I lived there until I married Felipe.*
a In these last two sentences the tense used on each occasion is the preterite because doña María is referring to completed events in the past even when they lasted for some years.
- b Hasta que is only followed by the subjunctive when future time is implied. This is not the case here.
- c casarse con: *to marry, get married to* (lit: *to marry oneself with*) The verb *casar* used without a reflexive pronoun refers to the action performed by a priest, clergyman, registrar etc. in marrying one person to another.
- 4 considero que Julia ha sido muy afortunada. *I consider that Julia has been very fortunate.*
Having plenty of opportunity to travel is a permanent feature of Julia's life and hence *ser* is used with *afortunado* (App. 11a).
- 5 Confieso que estoy satisfecho de mi vida de ama de casa. *I confess that I'm satisfied with my life as a housewife.*
a estar satisfecho de: *to be satisfied with*
b As in the sense of *in the role of* is translated by *de*.
- 6 pero no me importa demasiado: *but it doesn't bother me too much:*
7 me gusta la vida casera. *I like domestic life.*
Casero is an adjective derived from *casa: house*.
- 8 Durante el día me ocupo de los quehaceres domésticos. *During the day I busy myself with domestic chores.*
- 9 También dedico bastante tiempo a la cocina. *I also devote a fair amount of time to cooking.*
In lesson 14 you came across the word *cocina* meaning both *kitchen* and *cooker*. Here it has a third meaning: *cooking*.
- 10 Por las tardes paso horas mirando la televisión: *In the afternoons I spend hours watching television.*

- 11 es mi distracción favorita. *it's my favourite pastime.*
 12 Mi mayor preocupación es mi hijo Diego. *My greatest worry is my son Diego.*
 Mayor: *greater, greatest* is used in place of *más grande* when the reference is not to mere size (App. 13i).
 13 ¡Es tan irresponsable conduciendo! *He's so irresponsible driving!*
 14 Y lo siento por la pobre Teresa. *And I feel sorry for poor Teresa.*
 a Por is used to mean for when you wish to express feelings for someone. (App. 16b).
 b Pobre used before a noun means that one has sympathy for the person concerned. After a noun *pobre* means *poor* in the sense of not having riches.
 c If you use an adjective with the name of a person you are talking about, the definite article must precede the adjective; e.g. *la pobre Teresa; el pobre Manuel*. However you do not need the article if you are talking directly to the person concerned.
 15 Hoy Julia y yo vamos de compras. *Today Julia and I are going shopping*
ir de compras: to go shopping (L7, N8b)

Part two

¿Qué compramos? *What shall we buy?*

- 16 Tengo que empezar a hacer las compras hoy. *I have to start to do the shopping today.*
 Empezar requires a when followed by an infinitive.
 17 ¿Puedes acompañarme? *Can you come with me (accompany me)?*
 18 Ropa principalmente: *Clothes mainly:*
 19 varios vestidos y faldas para nosotras, camisas y corbatas para Ramón y guantes para todos. *some dresses and skirts for us, shirts and ties for Ramón and gloves for everyone.*
 a The masculine form *varios* is used to describe *vestidos* (masculine) and *faldas* (feminine).
 b Notice the feminine form *nosotras*. Doña Julia is obviously referring to herself, doña Cristina and Marisol.
 20 Entonces lo mejor será que vayamos a los almacenes del centro. *Then the best thing will be for us to go to the stores in the (city) centre.*
 a lo mejor: *the best thing*
 b Notice the subjunctive used after *lo mejor será que* (App. 9f).
 21 y quizás una gabardina. *and perhaps a raincoat.*
 22 ¿Quiéres que tomemos un taxi o prefieres que vayamos en el metro a la Plaza de Cataluña? *Do you want us to take a taxi or do you prefer us to go in the underground to Catalonia Square?*

- a Preferir, like *querer*, is a verb of wishing or wanting and so is followed by the subjunctive (App. 9e).
 b La Plaza de Cataluña is one of Barcelona's biggest and best known squares. It is a meeting point for the city's various underground lines.
 23 Lo que tú prefieras. *Whatever you prefer.*
 The subjunctive here is used after the indefinite *lo que* just as it was used after *lo mejor será que* (N20b) (App. 9f).
 En los grandes almacenes *In the big department stores*
 24 ¿podría dirigirme a los departamentos de medias y calcetines? *could you direct me to the departments for (of) stockings and socks.*
 ¿Podría dirigirme...?: *Could you direct me...?* is a very useful expression to memorise.
 25 Dependienta *Shop assistant*
 This is the feminine form of *dependiente* (L6, N42).
 26 A la izquierda de las escaleras mecánicas. *To the left of the escalators (mechanical stairs).*
 27 ¿Junto al departamento de ropa interior? *Next to the underwear department?*
 28 Sí, aquel mismo. *Yes, that very one.*
 29 ¿Qué deseaba? *What did you want?*
 Notice the use of the imperfect tense in this conventional form of address in shops. Similarly in the answer that follows.
 30 Quería nueve pares de medias, por favor. *I wanted nine pairs of stockings, please.*
 31 ¿Cómo las quería, señora? *How did you want them, madam?*
 32 me llevará tres pares en un tono claro, y los otros seis en un tono oscuro. *I'll take three pairs in a light shade (tone), and the other six in a dark shade.*
 The reflexive form *llevarse* gives the sense of *to take away*.
 33 ¿Las quiere finas o un poco más fuertes? *Do you want them fine or a little stronger?*
 34 Son para el invierno. *They're for the winter.*
 35 Ramón quiere dos pares en tono gris, otros dos en granate y los otros dos en marrón. *Ramón wants two pairs in grey, two more in maroon and the other two in dark brown.*
 Do not confuse *granate: maroon* with *marrón: dark brown*.
 En la zapatería *In the shoe shop*
 36 He visto un par de zapatos en el escaparate que me gustan. *I've seen a pair of shoes in the window which I like.*
 el escaparate: *shop window*

- 37 ¿Cómo son, señora? *What are they like, madam?*
 38 Son azul marino de tacón bajo. *They're dark blue with a low heel.*
 a Unlike other adjectives of colour azul marino has neither feminine nor plural forms.
 b Tacón refers only to the heel of a shoe.
 39 ¿Los quería de piel o de ante? *Did you want them in (of) leather or suede?*
 40 En charol si los tienen. *In patent leather if you have them.*
 41 Creo que sí. ¿Qué número calza, señora? *I think so. What number do you take, madam?*
 42 El 37, por favor. *Thirty-seven, please.*
 This would be roughly size 4 in English sizes.
 43 ¿Quiere probárselos? *Do you want to try them on?*
 probarse: to try on Notice the accent on probárselos (App. 14c).
 44 éstos me sientan bien. *these fit (me) well.*

Merendando *Having tea*

- 45 Camarera *Waitress*
 46 Queríamos dos té con limón. *We wanted two lemon teas.*
 Té: tea is written with an accent to distinguish it from te: you, to you.
 47 ¿Lo quieren con pastas o prefieren pasteles? *Do you want it with sweet biscuits or do you prefer cakes?*
 48 Yo quisiera un trozo de tarta de piña. *I'd like a slice of pineapple tart.*
 49 Esto de hacer compras es agotador. *This (business) of shopping is exhausting.*
 Notice this use of esto: this. You can use eso: that in a similar way (App. 14f).
 50 ¿Has comprado ya todo lo que necesitabas? *Have you bought everything that you needed yet?*
 todo lo que: everything that, all that You must never leave out lo from this fixed expression.
 51 Ni mucho menos. *Far from it (nor much less).*
 This is an idiomatic phrase.
 52 Aún tengo que comprar dos o tres sombreros, varias blusas y un suéter y una chaqueta para Marisol. *I still have to buy two or three hats, some blouses and a sweater and a jacket for Marisol.*

Part three

Curiosa ocupación *Strange occupation*

- 53 Yo leía los horarios de los trenes. *I was reading the train timetables.*

Más sobre negocios *More about business*

- 54 Hijos de D. Cayetano González y Cía. *D. Cayetano González Sons and Co.*
 Cía is the usual abbreviation for compañía: company.
 55 c/Fernando VII, 29. *29 Fernando VIIth Street.*
 56 Muy Sres. míos: *Dear Sirs:*
 57 Acuso recibo de su atenta del 3 de los corrientes. *I acknowledge receipt of your letter of the 3rd inst.,*
 Atento: attentive, polite is much used with carta, or alone with carta understood, in letters.
 58 y les agradezco me hayan notificado recibo de la mercancía. *and thank you for having notified me of your receipt of the goods.*
 The subjunctive is used after agradecer: to thank (App. 9a).
 59 Tengo el gusto de adjuntarles factura *I am pleased to enclose an invoice*
 60 El pago de la misma pueden efectuarlo del modo que crean más conveniente. *You may effect payment of the same in whatever form you consider (believe) more convenient.*
 The subjunctive crean is used following the indefinite antecedent del modo que: in the form that (App. 9f).
 61 Por supuesto si pagan al contado recibirán una bonificación. *Of course if you pay cash you will receive a discount.*
 62 En espera de sus gratas noticias. *Awaiting your esteemed reply.*
 This is a useful, conventional way of ending a letter.

Lección veintiuna Lesson twenty-one

La vida social de doña Cristina Doña Cristina's social life

What happens

Part one

At Mass doña Cristina meets an old friend doña Felisa, the widow of General Santos, one of her late husband's army friends. They go to a coffee house in the fashionable Paseo de Gracia for breakfast and a chat.

Part two

Doña Cristina y doña Felisa se desayunan a la española. *Doña Cristina and doña Felisa have a Spanish style breakfast.*

The two ladies order churros and cups of chocolate for breakfast. Doña Felisa appears to have her life very well organised.

En la peluquería At the hairdresser's

Dña Cristina has her hair shampooed, set and tinted. She also has a manicure and makes an appointment for Thursday for Marisol.

Part three

El "figaro" siniestro The sinister "figaro"

A customer wants his hair cut and washed. He would also like a shave. The barber warns him not to move about so much as it could be dangerous. Figaro, of course, was the famous Barber of Seville.

Receta culinaria A culinary recipe

This recipe tells you how to make churros. We hope you'll like them.

New words in this lesson

el afeitado shave
el Año Nuevo New Year
el azúcar sugar
el compañero de armas comrade in arms
el corte de pelo haircut
el champú shampoo
el chocolate nice little cup of chocolate
el churro dough fritter
el espejo mirror
el fuego fire, heat
el general general
el gramo gramme
los hijos children
el ingrediente ingredient
el lavado de cabeza shampoo (the process)
el moño bun
el peluquero barber, hairdresser
el rey king
los Reyes Epiphany, 12th night
el suizo Danish pastry
el tinte rinse, tint

la cacerola saucepan, stewpan
la cafetería coffee house
la cana grey hair

la cantidad quantity
la católica Catholic (fem.)
la churrera churros shaper
la ebullición boiling
la ensaimada round Danish pastry
la generación generation
la harina flour
la horquilla hairpin
la manicura manicure
la mano hand
la Navidad Christmas Day
la Nochebuena Christmas Eve
la onda wave
la Pascua Easter
la pasta paste
la peluquería hairdresser
la peluquería hairdresser's
la permanente perm, permanent wave
la receta recipe
la sal salt
la sartén frying pan
la uña nail
la vasija dish, pot, bowl

abundante abundant
agradable pleasant
a la española Spanish style
culinaria culinary

chileno Chilean
elegante elegant
liso straight, smooth
ondulado wavy
organizado organised
peinado combed, done (hair)
siniestro sinister
social social
viejo old

arreglar to tidy up
contener to contain
cubrir to cover
charlar to chat
desayunar(se) to have breakfast
descuidar to not worry
echar to pour
escurrir to drain
espolvorear to sprinkle
freír to fry
hacerse la manicura to have a manicure
hacerse una permanente to have a perm
hervir(ie) to boil
introducir to add, put in
marcar to set (hair)
mezclar to mix
morir(ue) to die

Notes

Part one

- Ayer empecé por ir a misa, como buena católica. Yesterday I began by going to Mass, like a good Catholic.
- Verbs ending in *zar* like *empezar* and *comenzar*, change *z* to *c* in the *yo* form of the preterite (App. 5c).
- Notice the difference between *empezar a*: to begin doing something and *empezar por*: to begin by doing something.
- En la iglesia encontré a mi vieja amiga Felisa. In (the) church I met my old friend Felisa.
Viejo coming before a noun does not necessarily mean *old* in the sense of *aged*. To indicate that, you should put *viejo* after the noun (App. 13f). Remember the two meanings of *pobre* (L20, N14b).
- a quien hacía años que no veía. whom I hadn't seen for years.

peinar to comb, do someone's hair
quedar to turn out, look
retirar to remove from, take off
from
sacar to take out
seguir(i) to get on
venir bien to suit

ambos both
aquello that
a quien whom
la you
el mío mine
nos each other
el suyo yours, his, hers, theirs
tanto so much
el tuyo yours

hacia casa homeward
por delante in (the) front, round the front
por detrás at the back, round the back

así se hará that's how it'll be (done)
¿cómo no? why not, what else?
hace tiempo que some time ago
hacia años que it was years since
ni... ni neither... nor

- a a quien The *a* is the personal *a*. Quien must always be used for *whom* following a preposition (App. 14h).
- b Veía is the *yo* form of the imperfect tense of *ver*: *to see*. It is irregular in that the endings are added to *ve* and not *v* (App. 4g).
- 4 Doña Felisa es la viuda del general Santos. *Doña Felisa is the widow of General Santos.*
Notice that *general* does not have a capital letter in Spanish.
- 5 Naturalmente, su marido y el mío eran compañeros de armas. *Naturally her husband and mine were comrades in arms.*
El mío: *mine* stands in place of *mi marido*. It is a possessive pronoun (App. 14g).
- 6 Hace tiempo que ambos murieron. *It's (some) time since they both died.*
Murieron is the third person plural of the preterite of *morir*(ue): *to die*. In the third person forms the *o* changes to *u* — *murió, murieron* (App. 4f).
- 7 Teníamos tanto que decíamos. *We had so much to say to each other.*
- 8 Cuando ya íbamos hacia casa, entramos en una cafetería del Paseo de Gracia. *When we were already going home, we went into a coffee shop in the Paseo de Gracia.*
- a Íbamos is the *nosotros* form of the imperfect of *ir*. (App. 4g). You have now come across all three irregular imperfects in Spanish, viz. *ser, ver, ir*. (App. 4g).
- b hacia casa: *homeward*
- 9 Allí desayunamos. *There we had breakfast.*
- 10 Tomamos, ¿cómo no? chocolate con churros. *We had chocolate and churros, what else?*
- a ¿cómo no?: *what else?, of course*
- b Chocolate con churros is a very typical Spanish breakfast comprising cups of hot, thick chocolate served with *churros* which are dipped into the chocolate. A recipe for *churros* appears in Part three. They are of various shapes.
- 11 ¡Cuánto me gustó poder charlar con Felisa! *How much I enjoyed being able to chat with Felisa!*
- 12 Es tan agradable encontrar a alguien de mi generación. *It's so pleasant to meet someone of my generation.*
Alguien: *someone* is usually a rather vague word. Here however it refers to a specific person, *doña Felisa*, and so the personal *a* must be used with it.
- 13 Felisa iba muy elegante y estaba muy bien peinada. *Felisa was looking very smart and her hair was very well groomed* (lit: *and was very well combed*).

Iba is the third person singular of the imperfect of *ir* (App. 4g). *Ir* is sometimes used instead of *estar* in personal descriptions.

- 14 Me recomendó su peluquería y ya he llamado para pedirles hora. *She recommended her hairdresser's to me and I've already called to ask them for an appointment.*

Part two

Doña Cristina y doña Felisa se desayunan a la española. *Doña Cristina and doña Felisa have a Spanish style breakfast.*

- 15 ¿Qué te parece si nos vamos a desayunar? *How do you feel about our going to have breakfast?*
You may use *desayunar* or the reflexive *desayunarse* for *to have breakfast*.
- 16 Nos queda tanto que hablar de esto y aquello. *We've so much left to talk about (of this and that).*
The neuter forms *esto* and *aquello* are used as *doña Cristina* is not referring to specific things (App. 14f).
- 17 Me apetece mucho tomar un chocolatito. *I really fancy having a little cup of chocolate.*
The diminutive form *chocolatito* indicates something rather nice as well as something that is just small.
- 18 Como Vds. lo saben hacer. *Just as you know how to make it.*
- 19 Descuiden, señoras. *Don't worry, ladies.*
- 20 Así se hará. *That's how it'll be* (lit: *thus it will be done*).
- 21 ¿Suizos? ¿Ensamadas? *Pastries?*
Suizos and *ensamadas* are similar to Danish pastries.
- 22 Nada de eso, hijo. *None of that, son.*
Hijo is often used in this rather familiar way, especially by people from Madrid.
- 23 Dos raciones de churros y que sean abundantes. *Two portions of churros and let them be large ones* (lit: *and let them be abundant*).
Notice how *doña Cristina* tries to ensure that they receive large portions of *churros*. *Que* followed by the subjunctive is the Spanish way of saying *let* or *may* (App. 9q). e.g. *que sean buenos*: *let them be good*; *que vaya pronto*: *may he come soon*.
- 24 Tendrás bastantes amigos. *You must have plenty of friends.*
It is quite common to use the future tense to make a supposition, as of course you can in English; e.g. *you'll have plenty of friends*.
- 25 No creas que muchos. *Not as many as you think.*
This is a very idiomatic expression using the present subjunctive of *creer*.

- 26 No me interesa demasiado cultivar la sociedad chilena. *Cultivating Chilean society doesn't interest me too much.*
The subject of *interesa* is *cultivar la sociedad chilena*. When a verb is, or forms part of, the subject of another verb it must be in the infinitive form and not the gerund as in English (*ing* form).
- 27 ¿No es interesante vivir en un ambiente tan internacional como el tuyo?
Isn't it interesting to live in an atmosphere as international as yours?
El tuyo: *yours* stands for *tu ambiente* and consequently it is masculine and singular. Like *el mío* (N5) it is a possessive pronoun (App. 14g). The possessive pronouns are singular or plural, masculine or feminine, according to the noun they stand in place of, no matter what person is referred to. Hence although it is *doña Cristina* who is involved here and in note 5, the pronouns used are masculine.
- 28 Yo tengo mi vida perfectamente organizada. *I have my life perfectly organised.*
Organizada: *organised* is really the past participle of *organizar*, used here as an adjective. When past participles are used as adjectives they agree with the noun or pronoun they are describing. Notice the difference between; *Tengo mi vida perfectamente organizada*: *I have my life perfectly organised.* and *He organizado mi vida*: *I have organised my life.*
- 29 el verano en Santander, (the) summer in Santander,
Santander is a fishing port and holiday resort on the north coast of Spain where the summers are pleasantly warm and not too hot.
- 30 y el invierno en Alicante. and (the) winter in Alicante.
Alicante is a port and holiday resort on the Costa Blanca in South-East Spain where the winters are quite warm and dry.
- 31 ¿Cómo siguen tus hijos? How are your children getting on?
- 32 Pasé Nochebuena y Navidad con mi hija Pilarín. *I spent Christmas Eve and Christmas Day with my daughter Pilarín*
- 33 y Año Nuevo y Reyes con Enrique; and (the) New Year and Epiphany with Enrique;
Reyes is the plural of *rey*: *king*. This refers to the 6th. of January, a public holiday in Spain on which presents are exchanged to commemorate the visit of the Wise Men to the Infant Jesus. A feature of the day is the street processions involving the Wise Men.
- 34 y luego, para Pascua, fui a Sevilla a pasar unos días con Mari Tere.
and then, for Easter, I went to Seville to spend a few days with Mari Tere.
Mari Tere is a short, familiar form of *María Teresa*.
- 35 Chica, la tuya sí que es una vida interesante. *Girl, yours really is an interesting life.*
a *Chica* is often used by ladies even when they're of *doña Cristina*'s age.

- b La tuya is the feminine form of *el tuyo* (N27). It stands here for *tu vida*.

En la peluquería *At the hairdresser's*

36 Peluquera *Hairdresser*

37 ¿Lavar y marcar? *Shampoo and set?*

38 también quiero que me dé un tinte que me cubra las canas. *I also want you to give me a rinse which will hide (cover) my grey hair.*

a Dé, the third person singular form of the present subjunctive of *dar*, is used here of course after *querer*. The accent is used to distinguish *dé* from *de*: *of, from*.

b Cubra is the third person singular form of the present subjunctive of *cubrir*: *to cover, hide*. The subjunctive is used here after the indefinite antecedent *un tinte que* (App. 9f). *Doña Cristina* does not specify the rinse she wants; all that matters is that it hides her grey hair.

39 ¿Y cómo quiere que la peine? *And how do you want me to comb you?*

40 Quiero que me haga un moño bonito que no necesite muchas horquillas. *I want you to do me a nice bun that doesn't need many hairpins.*

Again *doña Cristina* is not totally specific. Any bun that does not require many pins will do. Consequently we have the subjunctive *necesite* following the indefinite antecedent *un moño bonito que* (N38b).

41 ¿Cómo lo quiere por delante, liso o con ondas? *How do you want it in front, straight or with waves?*

Por delante: *in front* is an adverb of place. Try not to confuse it with *delante de*: *in front of* which is a preposition and is always followed by a noun or pronoun. Look at these two examples:

Está delante de la casa: *It's in front of the house.*

Está por delante: *It's in front.*

42 Un poco ondulado. *Slightly wavy.*

43 También quisiera hacermela la manicura. *I'd also like a manicure.*

Manicura comes from *mano*: *hand* which despite the *o* ending is feminine.

44 Necesito arreglarme un poco las uñas. *I need to tidy up my nails a little.*

45 Ahora mírese en el espejo. *Now look at yourself in the mirror*

46 para que vea como le ha quedado por detrás. *so that you can see how it has turned out at the back for you.*

a Remember that the subjunctive is used after *para que* (App. 9o).

b *Por detrás*: *at the back, behind* is another adverb of place (N41) and should not be confused with the preposition *detrás de*.

47 Desea hacerse una permanente. *She wants to have a perm.*

Notice the use of *hacerse* in phrases like *hacerse la manicura* (N43) and *hacerse una permanente*.

- 48 Puede ser el jueves, si le viene bien. *It can be Thursday, if that suits her.*
venir bien: to suit

Part three

El "figaro" siniestro *The sinister "figaro"*

- 49 Quisiera un corte de pelo y un lavado de cabeza. *I'd like a hair cut and a shampoo (a washing of head).*
50 Peluquero *Barber, hairdresser*
51 Un poco más largo que el suyo. *A little longer than yours.*
El suyo stands for su pelo: *your hair*. It is another possessive pronoun (App. 14g) and is used with the meaning of *his, hers, theirs* or *yours* (when *you* is translated by *Vd.* or *Vds.*).
52 ¿Champú especial o corriente? *Special or ordinary shampoo?*
Champú is the *shampoo* itself while lavado de cabeza refers to the action of washing the hair.
53 también quiero un afeitado. *I also want a shave.*
54 puede ser peligroso. *it may be dangerous.*

Receta culinaria *Culinary recipe*

- 55 Ingredientes y cantidades *Ingredients and quantities*
56 Harina: 500 gramos *Flour: 500 grammes*
57 En una cacerola se pone a hervir el agua con un poco de sal. *Slightly salted water is put to boil in a saucepan.*
58 Al empezar la ebullición se retira del fuego *When it starts to boil it is removed from the heat (fire)*
59 y se va echando en una vasija que contenga la harina. *and is poured into a dish which contains the flour.*
Contenga is the third person singular form of the present subjunctive of *contener*: to contain which follows the pattern outlined for tener (App. 4a). The subjunctive here is used after the indefinite antecedent *una vasija que* (N38b).
60 Se mezclan bien hasta dejar una pasta fina. *They are mixed well until a fine paste is left.*
61 Se introduce la pasta en la churrera *The paste is put into the "churrera"*
La churrera gives the spiral shape to the churros.
62 y se frien los churros en una sartén que contenga abundante aceite caliente. *and the churros are fried in a frying pan which contains plenty of hot oil.*
Contenga is used after *una sartén que* (N59).

- 63 Al sacar los churros de la sartén *When taking the churros out of the frying pan*
64 se dejan escurrir bien *let them drain well*
65 y se espolvorean con azúcar. *and sprinkle with sugar.*

Lección veintidós Lesson twenty-two

Excursión a Tossa de Mar A trip to Tossa de Mar

What happens

Part one

Teresa tells us a little about herself, her parents and her brother Pepito. She is proud of being Catalán and is very fond of dancing the sardana, which is the traditional dance of Catalonia. This coming weekend she and Diego are taking Marisol to Tossa.

Part two

Marisol recibe una invitación. *Marisol gets an invitation.*

Teresa and Diego invite Marisol to accompany them to Tossa. Diego is able to get permission from his uncle and aunt for her to come.

En la playa de Tossa de Mar *On the beach at Tossa de Mar*

They all look at the scene on the beautiful beach at Tossa where many tourists are sunbathing. Diego goes off to hire some cabins and the girls go to a chemist's.

Alquilando una caseta en la playa *Hiring a cabin on the beach*

Diego hires two cabins. He also finds out where the showers are located.

Part three

Abundancia de abogados *Lawyers in abundance*

St. Navarro would have liked to be a pilot but there is a long tradition of lawyers in his family. He feels that priests and lawyers abound in Spain.

Ayuno por superstición *Fasting through superstition*

Rosario tells Isabel that as there were thirteen of them at the dinner only she and Carmen enjoyed the food. The others were too superstitious to eat.

el abogado lawyer
 el aceite de broncear sun-tan oil
 el alquiler hire
 el arquitecto architect
 el ayuno fasting
 el bachillerato baccalaureat
 el baile dance
 el brazo arm
 el carácter character
 el cura priest
 el despacho office
 el grupo pile, group
 el guardia (beach) attendant
 el inconveniente objection, difficulty
 el millón million
 el mundo world
 el primo cousin
 el resguardo receipt
 el sardanista sardana dancer
 los servicios toilets

la abundancia plenty, abundance
 la caseta cabin
 la entusiasta enthusiast
 la espalda back
 la expresión expression
 la hamaca deckchair
 la invitación invitation
 la nariz nose
 la pierna leg
 la prima (girl) cousin
 la profesión profession
 la sardana Catalan folk dance
 la sociedad society, club
 la superstición superstition
 la tía aunt
 la tradición tradition

aristocrático aristocratic
 arreglado arranged, fixed
 ceremonioso ceremonious, stately
 de broncear sun-tan
 delgado slim
 duro de pelar hard to convince
 extraño strange

flaco thin
 libre free
 original unusual
 regordete plump
 supersticioso superstitious
 único only

absorber to absorb
 abundar to abound
 alquilar to hire
 asarse to roast
 cambiarse to get changed
 devolver(ue) to give back, return
 encargarse to deal with, see to
 encontrarse(ue) to meet up
 expirar to expire, run out
 haber que to be necessary
 hacerse to become
 morir(ue) de hambre to die of
 hunger

negar(ie) to refuse, deny
 pelar to convince
 poner un inconveniente to raise an
 objection
 preocuparse to worry
 recoger to collect
 renovar to renew

delante de in front of

a menos que unless

de pura cepa of pure stock
 jamás never

desde mi punto de vista from my
 point of view
 ¡qué barbaridad! how awful!
 ¡qué bárbaro! smashing!
 tanto mejor so much the better
 ¿verdad que...? is it true that...?

Part one

- 1 Ya nos hemos conocido. *We've already met (got to know each other).*
- 2 En efecto, soy Teresa Claret: *Indeed, I'm Teresa Claret:*
Claret is a typically Catalan surname.
- 3 catalana de pura cepa, de lo que me siento muy orgullosa. *Catalan of pure stock, of which I feel very proud.*
Catalana is the feminine form of catalán.
- 4 Mi padre es abogado y trabaja en su despacho: *My father is a lawyer and works in his office;*
- 5 mi madre se ocupa de la casa; *my mother looks after the house;*
- 6 mi único hermano se llama Pepito: *my only brother's name is Pepito:*
- 7 quiere hacerse arquitecto. *he wants to become an architect.*
Hacerse is used for *to become* when referring to something one can achieve by one's own efforts. You have already come across *ponerse: to become* when dealing with emotions (L14, N3b).
- 8 Terminó el bachillerato el año pasado. *He finished the baccalaureat last year.*
El bachillerato is the examination taken by Spanish students before leaving school and going to university or a similar establishment.
- 9 Yo soy una entusiasta de las sardanas. *I'm a fan of sardanas,*
- 10 y pertenezco a una sociedad de sardanistas. *and I belong to a society of sardana dancers.*
- 11 Las sardanas son, desde mi punto de vista, la expresión más típica del carácter catalán. *Sardanas are, from my point of view, the most typical expression of the Catalan character.*
- 12 Son unos bailes muy ceremoniosos y aristocráticos. *They're very stately, aristocratic dances.*
- 13 Marisol, la prima de Diego, va a acompañarnos a Tossa. *Marisol, Diego's cousin, is going to come to Tossa with us.*
- 14 Tossa tiene una de las playas más bonitas y originales de la Costa Brava. *Tossa has one of the prettiest and most unusual beaches on the Costa Brava.*

Part two

Marisol recibe una invitación. *Marisol gets an invitation.*

- 15 ¿verdad que vendrás con nosotros a Tossa? *is it true that you'll be coming with us to Tossa?*
Vendrás is the tú form of the future tense of venir (App. 4e).
- 16 ¡Qué bárbaro! *How smashing!*

- 17 a menos que tú tengas algo que hacer. *unless you have something to do.*
The subjunctive is always used after a **menos que: unless** (App. 9n).
18 pero no estoy segura de que me dejen. *but I'm not sure that they'll let me.*
When verbs of certainty like *estar seguro* are used negatively they become
in fact verbs of doubting. In such cases they are followed by the sub-
junctive (App. 9b).
19 Sé buen chico *Be a good boy*
Sé is the tú command form of *ser* (App. 4b). Notice that in form it is
identical to *sé: I know*. However in practice there is never any confusion.
20 No te preocupes. *Don't worry.*
21 Yo me encargo de eso. *I'll deal with that.*
22 A mí jamás me niega nadie nada. *Nobody ever refuses me anything.*
This is a perfect example of a Spanish negative sentence, translated
literally as *to me nobody never refuses me nothing* (App. 15).
23 Tanto mejor. *So much the better.*
24 Tía Julia no puso ningún inconveniente. *Aunt Julia didn't raise any*
objection.
25 Tío Ramón estuvo un poco más duro de pelar. *Uncle Ramón was a*
little harder to convince.
26 Eres el primo más simpático del mundo. *You're the nicest cousin in the*
world.
27 Un millón de gracias. *A million thanks.*
Notice that *un millón* is followed by *de* when the objects are named.

En la playa de Tossa de Mar *On the beach at Tossa de Mar*

- 28 Es también la más bonita de todas las que conozco. *It's also the prettiest*
of all those I know.
29 Y se ven unos tipos muy extraños aquí. *And some very strange*
characters are to be seen here.
Notice the difference between the two Spanish words for *character*. **Tip**
refers to a person and **carácter** to general characteristics (N11).
30 Y como ves los hay de todos los tamaños: *And as you see there are*
some of all sizes:
31 gordos, flacos, regordetes, delgados, etc. *fat, thin, plump, slim etc.*
32 Los pobres quieren absorber tanto sol en tan poco tiempo *The poor*
souls want to absorb so much sun in such a short time
33 que prácticamente se asan la espalda, el pecho y la nariz. *that they*
practically roast their backs, chests and noses.
Remember that with parts of the body it is normal to use the definite
article and to denote ownership by means of a reflexive pronoun. Notice
that in Spanish we have *espalda*, *pecho* and *nariz* all in the singular, the
idea being that each person has one back, one chest and one nose.

- 34 ¿Dónde podemos cambiarnos? *Where can we get changed?*
35 Iremos a una caseta. *We'll go to a cabin.*
36 Esperadme mientras voy a pagar el alquiler y a recoger las llaves.
Wait for me while I go to pay the hire charge and collect the keys.
37 Necesito un poco de aceite de broncear, para los brazos y las piernas.
I need a little sun-tan oil, for my arms and legs.
38 lo mejor será que nos encontremos todos *the best thing will be for us*
all to meet up
encontrarse: to meet up

Alquilando una caseta en la playa *Hiring a cabin on the beach*

- 39 ¿Le queda alguna caseta libre? *Have you got a cabin left free?*
40 Guardia *Attendant*
41 Quisiera alquilar dos por cuarenta y ocho horas. *I'd like to hire two*
for forty-eight hours.
42 pero eso no puede hacerse. *but that can't be done.*
43 Si quiere puedo alquilarlas por un día *If you like I can hire them to*
you for a day
44 y mañana renovar el alquiler. *and tomorrow renew the hire.*
45 Pues habrá que hacer eso. *Then we'll have to do that (lit: then it will*
be necessary to do that).
Habrá is the future form of *hay: there is, are*. **Hay que** is a useful way of
indicating that something is to be done. As *hay* is a form of the verb
haber you will realise that *habrá* is also the third person singular form of
the future of *haber* (App. 4e).
46 Aquí tiene los resguardos: *Here are the receipts:*
47 son la sesenta y cuatro y la sesenta y cinco. *they're sixty-four and*
sixty-five.
La in this sentence refers to *la caseta*.
48 Puede pagarme cuando devuelva las llaves. *You can pay me when you*
return the keys.
devolver(ue): to return in the sense of bring back or give back.
49 ¡Ah! Olvidaba decirle que el alquiler expira a las seis de la tarde.
Ah! I was forgetting to tell you that the hire runs out at six in the
evening.
Olvidar is followed directly by the infinitive of another verb, unlike
olvidarse which requires *de* (L16, N24b).
50 Continúe andando hasta que llegue a los servicios *Carry on walking*
until you reach the toilets
51 y luego vaya hacia la izquierda. *and then go towards the left.*
52 Las encontrará detrás de un grupo de hamacas. *You'll find them behind*
a pile of deckchairs.

22 Part three

Abundancia de abogados *Lawyers in abundance*

- 53 ¿Qué profesión tiene Vd.? *What's your profession?*
 54 Siempre quise ser piloto. *I always wanted to be a pilot.*
 Quise is the yo form of the preterite of *querer* (App. 4f). It is a pretérito grave.
 55 Por tradición. *By tradition.*
 56 ¡Qué barbaridad! *How awful!*
 57 Sí, los curas y los abogados abundan mucho en España. *Yes, priests and lawyers are in great abundance in Spain.*

Ayuno por superstición *Fasting through superstition*

- 58 ¿qué pidió? *what did she order?*
 59 ¿Y las otras chicas qué pidieron? *And what did the other girls order?*
 Pidió and pidieron are the third person singular and plural forms of the preterite of *pedir*: to ask for, order. This can be taken as an example of ir verbs which have a radical change from e to ie or i. Only the third person forms make this change from e to i in the preterite. The other forms are quite regular as you saw with *pedí* and *pedisteis*. Verbs which follow this pattern and have already appeared in the course include *sentir* (*sintió*, *sintieron*), *preferir* (*prefirió*, *prefirieron*), *seguir* (*siguió*, *siguieron*) and *servir* (*sirvió*, *sirvieron*) (App. 2c).
 60 Como son muy supersticiosas casi se murieron de hambre. *As they are very superstitious they almost died of hunger.*

23 Lección veintitrés Manuel consigue un ascenso. Lesson twenty-three Manuel gets promotion.

What happens

Part one

Luis is sitting over an appalling breakfast one Monday morning. He has only two exams left and is looking forward to joining his family in Barcelona. Manuel, sitting opposite, looks as if he has spent a very bad night.

Part two

Manuel hace muecas a su desayuno. *Manuel makes faces at his breakfast.*
 Manuel informs Luis that he has been offered promotion which will involve

his moving to Barcelona. Excessive celebrating of this the previous night had led to his present state.

El mismo día por la tarde en la habitación de Luis *The afternoon of the same day in Luis' room*

Manuel offers to drive Luis to Barcelona the following week when he leaves to take up his new post.

Part three

La quiebra de los negocios *Business failure*

Mr. Millán became bankrupt after only two months of running his own shoe shop. He is now an assistant in a shoe shop.

La compañía con mal nombre *The company with a bad name*

Far from accepting a rise Horacio states that he would not even work as manager of the company in question.

Marisa tiene inquietudes intelectuales. *Marisa has intellectual worries.*

Lucía tells Marisa that she is reading a novel called *Zalacain el Aventurero* by Pío Baroja, a writer of the 1898 generation.

New words in this lesson

el arco arch
 el ascenso rise (in salary etc.), promotion
 el aumento increase
 el autor author
 el cadáver corpse
 el calzado footwear, shoes
 el cuchillero knifegrinder
 el entusiasmo enthusiasm
 el guateque party
 el hígado liver
 el hombre de mundo man of the world
 el mesón inn
 el negocio trade, business
 el panecillo roll
 el período period
 el pesimismo pessimism
 el punto point
 el rato while
 el tío simpático good chap

la característica characteristic
 la compañía company
 la condición state, condition
 la desventaja disadvantage
 la estupidez silly thing, something silly
 la euforia excitement, gaiety
 la inquietud worry
 la juerga spree
 la porquería disaster, filthy mess
 la quiebra bankruptcy
 la resaca hangover

apetitoso appetising
 cierto (a) certain
 de los de primera first class, of the first order
 egoísta selfish
 feliz happy
 imponente massive, overwhelming

pésimo dreadful, very bad
profundo deep, profound
rancio rancid
sucio dirty
tal such (a)

acabar to end, finish
aceptar to accept
acostarse(ue) to go to bed, lie down
adelantar to bring forward
alejarse de to get away (from)
apostar(ue) to bet
arruinarse to be ruined, go bust
dejarse llevar to get carried away
hacer muecas to make faces
implicar to require, imply
irse to go away
irse de picos pardos to go off on a spree
marchar to go off
ofrecer to offer
organizar to organise
pasar to come in
pasarlo mal to have a bad time
recorrer to tour
sufrir to suffer
temerse to be afraid, regret
trasladarse to move, be transferred

unirse to join
ello it
lo de this business of
quien who

ante before
enfrente de opposite

al mes per month, a month
anoche last night
en casa de at the house of
en fin in short
excesivamente excessively
francamente frankly, honestly
todo oídos all ears

¿a qué? to which?
con quien with whom

a los dos meses in two months
¿cómo! what!
de lo menos... of the least
eso es that's it
ni de not even as
¡ojalá! if only!
por otra on the other (hand)
por una parte on the one hand
¿qué fue de? what became of?

Notes

Part one

- 1 Son las nueve de la mañana de un lunes. *It's nine o'clock one Monday morning.*
- 2 Estoy en la pensión sentado ante mi desayuno: *I'm in the boarding house sitting before my breakfast.*
- a Sentado: *sitting* is the past participle of *sentar*. In Spanish you must use the past participle to describe a state which is the result of an action and not the gerund. Hence we have *estoy sentado*: *I'm sitting, I'm seated* (App. 11b).
- b Ante: *before* refers to position and is an alternative to *delante de*. Antes de means *before* when referring to time.
- 3 café con leche y pancillos con mantequilla. *coffee with milk and rolls with butter.*
This would be a typical Spanish breakfast, especially in a boarding house.

- 4 Enfrente de mí está Manuel. *Opposite me is Manuel.*
- 8 quien más que una persona parece un cadáver. *who looks like a corpse more than a person.*
- 6 Tengo la impresión de que ayer se fue de picos pardos. *I have the impression that yesterday he went off on a spree.*
- Irse de picos pardos is a very colloquial, idiomatic expression.
- 7 y ahora está sufriendo una resaca imponente. *and now he is suffering (from) a massive hangover.*
- 8 El desayuno es de lo menos apetitoso; *Breakfast is not the least bit appetising* (lit: *breakfast is of the least appetising*);
- 9 el café parece agua sucia, los pancillos están duros y la mantequilla rancia. *the coffee is like dirty water, the rolls are hard and the butter rancid.*
- 10 pronto podré unirme a mi familia en Barcelona. *soon I'll be able to join my family in Barcelona.*
- 11 ¡Ojalá hubiera estudiado cuando debía! *If only I had studied when I should have!*
- a Ojalá: *if only* is usually followed by the past subjunctive, which will be fully covered in later lessons.
- b Hubiera is part of the past subjunctive of *haber*.
- 12 Manuel sigue con muy mala cara. *Manuel is still looking bad (continues with very bad face).*
- 13 El pobre hombre debe estar pasándolo mal; *The poor man must be having a bad time;*
pasarlo mal: *to have a bad time*
- 14 apuesto que anoche no dormió nada. *I bet that last night he didn't sleep at all.*
- a Dormió is the third person singular form of the preterite of *dormir*. It is like *morir* (L21, N6) in that the third person forms change o to u giving us *durmíó* and *durmieron* (App. 4f).
- b Notice the use of *nada*: *nothing* which here gives emphasis to the fact that Manuel didn't sleep at all.
- 15 En fin, desventajas de ser un hombre de mundo. *In short, (the) disadvantages of being a man of (the) world.*

Part two

- Manuel hace muecas a su desayuno. *Manuel makes faces at his breakfast.*
- 16 Este desayuno es una auténtica porquería. *This breakfast is a real disaster.*
 - 17 Por una parte el desayuno es malo, y por otra, tu hígado debe estar en pésima condición. *On the one hand the breakfast is bad, and on the other, your liver must be in (a) dreadful state.*

por una parte... por otra: *on (the) one hand... on the other*

- 18 Hice una estupidez con celebrar lo del ascenso. *I did a silly thing in celebrating this business of the rise.*
Notice the use of *lo* de meaning *this business of, this affair of*. It is similar to *esto* de and *eso* de (L20, N49).
- 19 no he tenido tiempo de comunicártelo. *I haven't had time to let you know about it.*
- 20 Ya me parecía a mí que algo importante había ocurrido. *I was already thinking that something important had happened.*
Había ocurrido is the third person singular form of the pluperfect tense of *ocurrir*. The pluperfect is a past tense made up of the imperfect tense of *haber* and the past participle (App. 1i). It is the equivalent of the English *had* + past participle.
- 21 Aunque no parecés muy feliz. *Although you don't look very happy.*
- 22 Ayer me ofrecieron un puesto con un aumento de cuatro mil pesetas al mes. *Yesterday they offered me a job with an increase of four thousand pesetas a month.*
al mes: *a month, per month*
- 23 Ello implica que me traslade a Barcelona. *It requires me to (it implies that I) move to Barcelona.*
- a You have frequently encountered the neuter pronouns *esto*: *this* and *eso*: *that* used when you refer to something vague and not specific and which therefore cannot be considered masculine or feminine. Likewise we have *ello*: *it* used when we are not referring to a particular noun and hence cannot use *él* or *ella* (App. 14a). *Ello* here refers to the whole offer with all its details and Manuel's acceptance of it.
- b The subjunctive *me traslade* is used after *implicar*, a verb of implying (App. 9j).
- 24 Y naturalmente aceptaste. *And naturally you accepted.*
- 25 Hasta cierto punto me alegraré de alejarme de todo esto. *To a certain extent (up to a certain point), I shall be pleased to get away from all this.*
Cierto means *a certain* and you should not use *un* or *una* with it. Remember *otro*: *another* (L2, N52).
- 26 Y luego te fuiste a celebrarlo con tal entusiasmo que hoy lo estás pagando. *And then you went off to celebrate it with such enthusiasm that today you're paying for it.*
- a *irse*: *to go off, go away*
- b Tal: *such* (a) is an adjective and is always used with a noun. Do not confuse it with *tan*: *so, such* a which is an adverb like *muy*: *very* used to modify an adjective. Notice the difference in these two examples:
Lo hizo con tal entusiasmo: *He did it with such enthusiasm.*
Tiene una playa tan bonita: *It has such a pretty beach (a beach so pretty).*

27 Me temo que me dejé llevar por la euforia excesivamente. *I'm afraid that I got excessively carried away by the excitement.*

dejarse llevar: *to get carried away* (lit: *to allow oneself to be carried away*).

28 Primero fuimos a recorrer bares por el Madrid viejo, ya sabes: *First we went on a pub crawl (tour of the bars) through old Madrid, you know: El Madrid viejo* The definite article is used with place names when they are described by an adjective. You will remember that this was also the case with personal names, e.g. la pobre Teresa (L20, N14c).

29 la Plaza Mayor, el Mesón de Paredes, el Arco de Cuchilleros, etc. *The Main Square, the Inn of Paredes, the Knife-grinders' Arch, etc.*
These are all well known parts of the old quarter of Madrid which is centred around the Plaza Mayor. Most Spanish towns have a Plaza Mayor, which in days gone by was the focal point of town life.

30 ¿dónde acabasteis la juerga? *where did you end the spree?*

31 Acabamos organizando un guateque de los de primera. *We ended up (by) organising a first class party,*

a Acabamos organizando: *we ended up by organising* Notice that in Spanish the verb *acabamos* is followed immediately by the gerund *organizando* without *por*: *by*. You must never use *por* and a gerund in Spanish, as the gerund of a verb is sufficient in itself to translate *by doing something* (App. 7f). If you use *por* it must be followed by an infinitive as in *empecé por ir a misa* (L21, N1b).

b de los de primera: *first class*

32 en casa de una de las chicas. *at the house of one of the girls.*

33 Mejor será que te acuestes un rato. *It will be best for you to lie down for a while.*

a acostarse(ue): *to lie down, go to bed*. Notice the difference in meaning between *se acuesta*: *he's lying down* (an ACTION) and *está acostado*: *he's lying down* (a STATE resulting from an action) (N2a).

b The subjunctive is used after *mejor será* (App. 9j).

El mismo día por la tarde en la habitación de Luis *The afternoon of the same day in Luis' room*

34 ¿Puedo pasar un momento? *May I come in for a moment?*
pasar: *to come in*

35 Sí, pasa y siéntate. *Yes, come in and sit down.*

36 ¿Cómo te sientes ahora? *How do you feel now?*

Do not confuse *sentarse*(ie): *to sit down* and *sentirse*(ie): *to feel*. Although *me siento* can mean *I'm sitting down* or *I feel* the rest of the sentence will make the meaning clear.

37 He venido para decirte algo que había querido decirte esta mañana.

I've come to tell you something that I had meant (wanted) to tell you this morning.

Había querido is the *yo* form of the pluperfect tense of **querer** (N20).

38 **Soy todo oídos.** *I'm all ears.*

Remember the difference between **oído** and **oreja** (L19, N25b).

39 **¿Cuándo habías pensado marchar a Barcelona?** *When had you intended to go off to Barcelona?*

Habías pensado is the *tú* form of the pluperfect tense of **pensar**.

40 **Dentro de unos quince o veinte días.** *In about fifteen or twenty days.*

a **Unos** indicates that Luis is not certain about the number of days in question and is merely giving a rough estimate.

b **Quince días** is used to translate a *fortnight*.

41 **¿No puedes adelantar el viaje?** *Can't you bring the trip forward?*

42 **Claro que puedo.** *Of course I can.*

43 **Eres un tío simpático.** *You're a good chap.*

Tío: uncle is often used in this way.

44 **En realidad lo hago por motivos egoístas.** *Really I'm doing it for selfish reasons.*

For in the sense of out of, on account of is translated by **por** (App.16b).

45 **Es francamente aburrido conducir durante horas sin tener a nadie con quien hablar.** *Frankly it's boring to drive for hours without having anyone to talk to (with whom to talk).*

a **Sin:** *without* is considered to be a negative word and so we must use **nadie** after the verb and not **alguien** (App.15b).

b Remember that *who* or *whom* must be translated by **quien** following a preposition.

Part three

La quiebra de los negocios *Business failure*

46 **¿Sigue Vd. en el negocio de zapatos?** *Are you still in the shoe business?*

47 **Soy dependiente en una tienda de calzados.** *I'm an assistant in a shoe shop.*

48 **¿Qué fue de ella?** *What became of it?*

49 **Me arruiné a los dos meses y tuve que cerrarla.** *I was ruined in two months and had to close (it).*

Notice **a los dos meses:** *in two months, after two months.*

La compañía con mal nombre *The company with a bad name*

50 **Nada de eso.** *Not at all.*

51 **Con esa compañía no trabajo ni de director.** *With that company I wouldn't even work as manager.*
no...ni: *not even*

Marisa tiene inquietudes intelectuales. *Marisa has intellectual worries.*

52 **¿Qué libro estás leyendo?** *What book are you reading?*

Leyendo is the gerund of **leer:** *to read.* A number of **er** and **ir** verbs have the ending **yendo** in the gerund instead of the usual **iendo**. Other verbs you have so far come across which have this feature are **creer – creyendo; ir – yendo; oír – oyendo** and **traer – trayendo** (App. 4c).

53 Se llama "Zalacain el Aventurero". *It's called "Zalacain the Adventurer".*

54 **¿Quién es el autor?** *Who is the author?*

55 **¿A qué período pertenece?** *To which period does he belong?*

56 **A la generación del Noventa y Ocho.** *To the Ninety-Eight generation.*
The title of the 1898 generation is applied to a number of writers who, writing at the beginning of this century, critically analysed the state of Spain following the loss of her remaining American colonies in the Spanish-American war of 1898.

57 **¿Cuál es la característica principal de esa generación?** *What is the main characteristic of that generation?*

58 **Un profundo pesimismo.** *A deep pessimism.*

Lección veinticuatro Lesson twenty-four

**Manuel hace las maletas.
Manuel packs his cases.**

What happens

Part one

Chaos reigns in Manuel's room as he does his packing. He has many regrets about leaving Madrid but realises how silly it would be to waste the opportunities presented by his promotion.

Part two

Manuel se entrevista con doña Paquita. *Manuel has an interview with doña Paquita.*

Manuel informs doña Paquita that he will soon be leaving and that she can dispose of his room. She is rather upset by the news.

Doña Paquita "se entrevista" con Manuel. *Doña Paquita "has an interview" with Manuel.*

Doña Paquita reads out a list of things that have either been broken or have disappeared from Manuel's room. However, she does not wish to be reimbursed for them. Manuel gives her a little present which almost moves her to tears.

¿Podríamos compensarle? *Might we compensate you?*

Sr. Navarro goes to the dry cleaner's to collect a suit. To his dismay he learns that all the buttons on the jacket have been lost and a large hole has appeared in the trousers. He is offered compensation.

New words in this lesson

el abrigo overcoat
el agujero hole
el artículo de tocador toilet article
el asunto matter, subject
el botón button
el cálculo calculation, account
el cepillo brush
el desorden disorder
el jabón soap
los pantalones trousers
el pijama pyjamas
el regalito little present
el sin fin heap, pile
el traje suit
el vaso glass, tumbler

la calamidad calamity, disaster
la entrevista interview
la máquina de afeitar electric shaver
la pasta de dientes toothpaste
la tarea task
las tijeras scissors
la tintorera dry cleaning assistant
la tintorería dry cleaner's
la toalla towel

absoluto complete, absolute
exacto exact, precise
listo ready
molesto tiresome
obstinado obstinate, stubborn

abonar to reimburse
abrirse camino to make one's way
acumular to accumulate
ascender(ie) to promote
compensar to compensate
darse cuenta (de) to realise
darse prisa to hurry

dedicarse a to devote/dedicate oneself to
dejar pasar to let slip, let go by
desaparecer to disappear
desperdiciar to waste, miss
disponer de to dispose of
echar de menos to miss
echarse a llorar to burst into tears
enfadarse to get annoyed
entregar to hand over
entrevistarse con to have an interview with
faltar to be missing
hacer las maletas to pack
insinuar to insinuate
irse corriendo to fly, run off
marcharse to leave
mentir(ie) to lie
molestar to disturb, bother
molestar(se) to take trouble, bother oneself
perdonar to beg pardon
quedar to remain, stay
reinar to reign
romperse to get broken
tener afecto a to be fond of
volverse(ue) atrás to turn back

antes de que before
o...o either...or

atrás back
con frecuencia frequently
con seguridad surely
indefinidamente indefinitely
muchísimo very much

para última hora until the last moment

Part one

- 1 Casi me gustaría volverme atrás. *I'd almost like to turn back.*
a me gustaría: *I'd like, it would please me* Gustaría is the third person singular form of the conditional tense of *gustar*. The conditional tense in Spanish is the equivalent of the English conditional tense using *should* and *would*.
- b volverse atrás: *to turn back*
- 2 ¡Me cuesta tanto dejar Madrid! *It's so hard (it costs me so much) to leave Madrid!*
- 3 hasta que por fin conseguí abrirme camino; *until at last I managed to make my way;*
- 4 pero sería estúpido desperdiciar esta oportunidad. *but it would be stupid to miss this opportunity.*
Sería is the third person singular form of the conditional tense of *ser* (N1a). To form the conditional tense you have to remove the endings of the future tense and replace them by *ía; ías; ía; íamos; íais; ían*. Hence of *ser* we have: *sería; serías; sería; seríamos; seríais; serían* (App. 1f).
- 5 Ahora me dedico a hacer las maletas. *Now I'm devoting myself to doing the packing.*
Dedicarse requires a before a following infinitive (App. 10b).
- 6 ¿Qué tarea más molesta! *What a tiresome task!*
- 7 En mi cuarto reina el más absoluto desorden. *In my room the most complete disorder reigns.*
- 8 Mis pantalones y chaquetas están en la tintorería. *My trousers and jackets are at the dry cleaner's.*
- 9 Me dijeron que estarían listos mañana. *They told me they'd be ready tomorrow.*
Estarían is the third person plural form of the conditional of *estar* (N1a, 4).
- 10 Hoy debo comprarme un par de pijamas. *Today I must buy myself a couple of pairs of pyjamas.*
In Spanish an *pijama* means a *pair of pyjamas*. Consequently, as *un par* means a *pair* or a *couple*, *un par de pijamas* must mean a *couple of pairs of pyjamas*.
- 11 y en cuanto llegue a Barcelona un abrigo nuevo. *and as soon as I get to Barcelona a new overcoat.*
- 12 Dejaré para última hora los artículos de tocador: *I shall leave the toilet articles until the last moment:*
- 13 el jabón, las toallas, la máquina de afeitar, etc. *the soap, towels, electric shaver, etc.*

- 14 También debo recordar los varios cepillos, la pasta de dientes, las tijeras...
I must also remember the various brushes, toothpaste, scissors...
- 15 ¡Nunca pude imaginar que acumularía tantas cosas! *I could never imagine that I should accumulate so many things!*
 Acumularía is the yo form of the conditional of *acumular*.
- 16 Hay muchas que más valdría la pena no encontrar. *There are many that it would be better (be more worthwhile) not to find.*
 Valdría is the third person singular form of the conditional of *valer* (App. 4e).
- 17 Me refiero a un sin fin de facturas que no he pagado. *I'm referring to a heap of bills which I haven't paid.*

Part two

Manuel se entrevista con doña Paquita. *Manuel has an interview with doña Paquita*

- 18 Dígame, pero dése prisa, por favor. *Of course, but hurry up, please.*
 a Dígame is often used in this way to tell someone to go ahead and say what they want. In such cases one cannot always translate it literally into English.
- b dése prisa: *hurry up* Dése is the Vd. command form of *darse*.
- 19 me quedaré allí definitivamente, así que puede Vd. disponer de mi habitación. *I shall be staying there permanently (definitely), so that you can dispose of my room.*
- 20 ¿Por qué se marcha Vd.? *Why are you leaving?*
- 21 No se enfade Vd. doña Paquita, nadie me ha hecho nada; *Don't get annoyed doña Paquita, nobody has done anything to me;*
 enfadarse: *to become angry, annoyed*
- 22 pero me han ascendido *but I've been promoted (lit: they've promoted me)*
- 23 Yo creía que nos tenía Vd. afecto. *I thought that you were fond of us (had affection for us).*
 tener afecto a: *to be fond of*
- 24 Y se lo tengo, *And so I am,*
- 25 pero Vd. comprenderá, que no podía dejar pasar esta oportunidad. *but you will understand that I couldn't let this opportunity slip.*
- 26 El jueves para ser exacto. *On Thursday to be exact.*
- 27 Descuide que así lo haré. *Don't worry, for I will (so I shall do).*
- 28 Probablemente vendré a Madrid con frecuencia. *I'll probably come to Madrid frequently.*

Doña Paquita "se entrevista" con Manuel. *Doña Paquita "has an interview" with Manuel.*

- 29 ¿Podría pasar un momento? *Might I come in for a moment?*

Podría is the yo form of the conditional of *poder* (App. 4e). It can often be translated as *might* as well as *could*, *would be able*, in the same way as the present tense of *poder* can be translated as *may*.

- 30 Si no le molesta *If it doesn't bother you*
- 31 me gustaría leerle una lista de las cosas que o se han roto o bien han desaparecido en su habitación. *I should like to read you a list of the things which have either got broken or have disappeared in your room.*
 a o...o (bien): *either...or* The use of *bien* is optional.
- b Roto is the past participle of *romper*: *to break*. There is also a regular form *rompido* but *roto* is the more useful word to remember as it is also used as an adjective meaning *broken*, e.g. *tengo la pierna rota: I have a broken leg.*
- c romper: *to break* romperse: *to get broken*
- 32 Diga, diga. *Go ahead.*
- 33 Según mis cálculos faltan nueve vasos de agua, tres tenedores y media docena de cuchillos de postre. *According to my calculations nine tumblers (water glasses), three forks and half a dozen dessert knives are missing.*
- 34 No estará Vd. insinuando que miento. *You won't be insinuating that I'm lying.*
 Mentir(ie): *to lie* follows the pattern outlined for *pedir* in the preterite tense (App. 2b,c).
- 35 Dígame cuánto tengo que abonarle y dejemos este asunto. *Tell me how much I have to reimburse you and let's leave this matter.*
- 36 Además quiero que quedemos buenos amigos. *Besides I want us to remain good friends.*
- 37 Sabe doña Paquita, la voy a echar mucho de menos. *You know doña Paquita, I'm going to miss you a lot.*
 echar de menos: *to miss* This does not apply to missing trains, buses etc. for which you have to use *perder* (L5, N39).
- 38 ¿Por qué será tan obstinado? *Why must you be so obstinate?*
 Remember that it is quite common to use the future tense with the sense of *must*.
- 39 No puede continuar así indefinidamente. *You can't continue like this indefinitely.*
- 40 Necesita pronto una mujer que se ocupe de Vd. *You need a woman to take care of you soon.*
 Doña Paquita is not thinking of a specific woman here, but rather any woman who would marry Manuel and look after him. Consequently there is no personal a before *una mujer*. Likewise *se ocupe* is in the subjunctive following the indefinite antecedent *una mujer* que (App. 9f).
- 41 Ya me imaginaba que no haría ningún caso de lo que le diga. *I imagined that you would take no notice of whatever I say to you.*

- a **Haría** is the *yo* form of the conditional of *hacer* (App. 4e).
 b The subjunctive *diga* is used following *lo que* which is another indefinite antecedent.
- 42 Quizás algún día se dé cuenta y me lo agradezca. *Perhaps some day you'll realise and thank me.*
darse cuenta: to realise It is followed by *de* when you state what it is that is realised. It must not be used for realising ambitions etc.
- 43 Con seguridad. *Surely.*
 44 Aquí tengo un regalito para Vd. *Here I have a little present for you.*
 45 Es poca cosa pero espero que le guste. *It's not much but I hope you like it.*
 46 Estoy segura que me gustará muchísimo. *I'm sure I'll like it very much.*
 47 Y ahora me voy corriendo antes de que me eche a llorar. *And now I must fly before I burst into tears.*
- a me voy corriendo: *I must fly* Literally this means *I'm going off running*. It is very common to use a gerund with a verb of motion in this way giving us phrases like *salieron corriendo*: *they ran out*; *subió andando*: *he walked up* (App. 7f).
- b Antes de que: *before* is followed by the subjunctive when future time is implied (App. 9g).
- c Echarse a is often used to mean *to begin*. Hence *echarse a llorar*: *to begin to cry, to burst into tears*.
- 48 Que le vaya todo bien. *May everything go well for you.*
 Que followed by the subjunctive is the Spanish way of hoping that something may happen (App. 9q). Notice there is no accent on *que*.

Part three

¿Podríamos compensarle? *Might we compensate you?*

- 49 ¿Podría recoger un traje que dejé el otro día para limpiar? *Could I collect a suit I left the other day to be cleaned?*
 50 Tintorera *Dry cleaning assistant*
 51 ¿Le importaría entregarme el recibo? *Would you mind handing me the receipt?*
 52 Hace media hora que debería haber llegado a una entrevista muy importante. *I should have been at a very important interview half an hour ago.*
 The conditional tense of *deber* gives us the Spanish equivalent of the English *should* or *ought to*.
 53 ...bueno, podríamos compensarle. *...well, we could compensate you.*
 54 ¿ha ocurrido alguna calamidad? *has there been some calamity?*
 55 hemos perdido todos los botones de la chaqueta *we've lost all the buttons from the jacket*
 56 y hay un agujero enorme en los pantalones. *and there's a huge hole in the trousers.*

Lección veinticinco

Lesson twenty-five

Un partido de fútbol, el zoo y la zarzuela A football match, the zoo and a musical comedy

What happens

Part one

D. Felipe is rather disappointed that the cup semi-final between Barcelona and Real Madrid, to which he had taken Luis, ended in a 2-2 draw. Meantime Marisol, Teresa and Diego were in Tossa, the ladies had gone to a musical play and D. Ramón had gone to see a friend.

Part two

Luis recibe una invitación. *Luis gets an invitation.*

D. Felipe invites Luis to come to the match with him. They have different ideas as to who will win. D. Ramón is going to visit Sr. Puig, a friend of his, who has a responsible position at the zoo.

Al zoo con don Ramón *To the zoo with don Ramón*

Sr. Puig shows D. Ramón round the zoo, pointing out some of the more interesting animals.

Las señoras regresan de la zarzuela. *The ladies return from the musical play.*

Doña María and doña Cristina discuss the production while doña Julia returns to the theatre to look for doña Cristina's glasses.

Part three

Marisa quiere ser moderna. *Marisa wants to be modern.*

Marisa gets rather annoyed when she goes to buy a winter coat as the assistant suggests she should go to another department where more "classical" coats are sold.

Orgullo catalán *Catalan pride*

Raimundo had expected Albert, a Catalan, and his friend Agustín, from Madrid, to visit him the day before. However they had important matters to attend to in the shape of a six hour argument about football.

5 New words in this lesson

el árbitro referee
el ejemplar specimen
el elefante elephant
el empate draw, tie
el envío consignment
el estadio stadium
el hincha fan
el león lion
el loro parrot
el mono monkey
el orgullo pride
el oso bear
el pájaro bird (small)
el partido match, game
el paso step
el siglo century
el tanto goal
el tigre tiger
el zoo zoo

la acomodadora usherette
el águila eagle
la apuesta bet
el ave bird, fowl
la butaca seat
la confianza confidence
la copa cup
la creación creation
la esperanza hope
la fiera wild animal
las gafas glasses, spectacles
la paloma dove, pigeon
la pantera panther
la representación performance, production
la semi-final semi-final
la sensación sensation, stir
la talla size
la taza cup
la tribuna stand
la variedad variety
la velada evening('s entertainment), soirée
la verbena night time festival
la zarzuela musical play, light opera

albino albino
artístico artistic

campeón champion
científico scientist, scientific
clásico classical
desilusionado disappointed
dramático dramatic
imponente imposing
importantísimo very important
injusto unjust, unfair
juntos together
logrado played, portrayed
mayor larger
musical musical
personal personal
popularísimo very popular
raro rare

adquirir(ie) to acquire
aparear to get off
asegurar to assure
asistir a to attend, be present at
ayudar to help
bajar to go down
caerse to fall
cantar to sing
causar to cause
dar un paso to take a step
deklarar to recite, declaim
discutir to argue
divertir(ie) to amuse
enfrentarse to face, confront (each other)
esperar de regreso to expect back
estar de acuerdo to agree, be in agreement
mantener to keep
negarse(ie) a to refuse to
oir decir to hear tell
prescindir de to do without
recoger to fetch
regresar to return
sorprenderse to be surprised

las que which
se themselves, each other

a favor de in favour of
debajo de under, underneath

con la condición de que on condition that

alternativamente alternately
de hoy today's
de paso on the way
de regreso back, returned
genuinamente genuinely
personalmente personally
totalmente totally

a mi modo de ver in my opinion

Notes Part one

- Estoy francamente desilusionado. *I'm frankly disappointed.*
- Esta tarde mi sobrino Luis y yo bajamos al estadio: *This afternoon my nephew Luis and I went down to the stadium:*
You may have noticed that many Spanish words begin with *est* or *esp*, and look very much like English words beginning with *st* or *sp*. In fact you will never find Spanish words that begin with *st* or *sp*; there is always an *e* coming first.
- se celebraba un encuentro de semi-final de copa. *a cup semi-final encounter was taking place.*
- Se enfrentaban dos equipos campeones. *Two champion teams were facing each other.*
- Naturalmente yo estaba seguro que ganaría el Barcelona. *Naturally I was certain that Barcelona would win.*
It is customary to use the definite article with names of sports teams in Spanish; hence *el Barcelona*, *el Madrid*, *el Valencia* etc.
- pero el árbitro parecía totalmente a favor del Madrid. *but the referee seemed completely on the side of (in favour of) Madrid.*
El Madrid is the famous Real Madrid. There is another top team in Madrid, *el Atlético Madrid*, and they are known as *el Atlético*.
- El partido terminó con un empate a dos tantos: *The match ended in a 2-2 draw (with a draw at two goals):*
- a mi modo de ver resultado muy injusto. *in my opinion a very unjust result.*
- En fin, es verdad que el Barcelona no consiguió ganar. *Anyway, it's true that Barcelona didn't manage to win.*
- pero todavía tengo esperanzas de que gane la copa. *but I still have hopes that they will win the cup.*
- Tener esperanzas de que: *to have hopes that* is a verb of emotion and so is followed by the subjunctive (App. 9a).

con mucho gusto with great pleasure
desde hace años for years
esta noche tonight
no habrá lugar a eso there'll be no chance of that
por lo tanto therefore
¿serías tan amable de...? would you be so kind as...?
tanto...como both...and
cien por cien hundred per cent, through and through

25

- b Notice that the singular form of the verb *gane* is used, as the real subject of it is *el Barcelona*. Of course in English we use *they* when referring to a team, thinking of the players that make up the team.
- 11 *les esperamos de regreso esta noche.* *we're expecting them back tonight.*
De regreso means *back* in the sense of *having returned*. *Estar de regreso* is *to be back*, *to have returned*.
- 12 *Mi cuñado Ramón visitó a un viejo amigo científico.* *My brother in law Ramón visited an old scientist friend.*
- 13 *Las señoras asistieron a una zarzuela.* *The ladies went to a musical play.*
 a *Asistir a:* *to attend, be present at* is frequently used when referring to entertainments, meetings etc.
- b *Una zarzuela* is a musical play. It is a traditional form of Spanish entertainment combining popular Spanish music and poetry. Remember the other meaning of *zarzuela* (L18, N67).
- 14 *Vieron una de las más populares: "La Verbena de la Paloma".* *They saw one of the most popular: "La Verbena de la Paloma".*
 a *la verbena:* *night time festival*
 b *la paloma:* *dove, pigeon*
- 15 *Las zarzuelas son obras dramáticas y musicales, en las que alternativamente se declama y se canta.* *"Zarzuelas" are dramatic, musical works, in which one alternately recites and sings.*
- 16 *Son creaciones artísticas genuinamente españolas.* *They are genuinely Spanish artistic creations.*

Part two

Luis recibe una invitación. *Luis gets an invitation.*

- 17 *por lo tanto no es ningún problema conseguirte entrada.* *therefore it's no problem to get you a ticket.*
- 18 *Iremos a tribuna para estar más cómodos.* *We'll go in (the) stand to be more comfortable.*
- 19 *Acepto con la condición de que no te sorprendas cuando gane el Madrid.* *I accept on condition that you're not surprised when Madrid win.*
 The subjunctive is always used after *con la condición de que:* *on condition that* (App. 9n).
- 20 *No te preocupes que no habrá lugar a eso.* *Don't worry for there'll be no chance (place) of that.*
- 21 *El triunfo del Barcelona es seguro.* *Barcelona's triumph is certain.*
Ser seguro: *to be certain* is used with inanimate objects. With people you must use *estar seguro* (N5).
- 22 *Me divierte la confianza que tienes en el Barça.* *The confidence which you have in 'Barça' amuses me.*

Barça is a shortened Catalan form of *Barcelona* and is much used when referring to the Barcelona football club.

- 23 *Soy "híncha" cien por cien.* *I'm a "fan" through and through (one hundred per cent).*
- 24 *Te apuesto lo que quieras que gana el Madrid 2-0.* *I bet you whatever you like that Madrid will win 2-0.*
 Remember the subjunctive after *lo que*.
- 25 *Y yo te aseguro que ganará el Barcelona 3-0.* *And I assure you that Barcelona will win 3-0.*
- 26 *Temo que perderías la apuesta.* *I'm afraid you would lose the bet.*
- 27 *me apearé en el zoo;* *I'll get off at the zoo;*
- 28 *así podré visitar a mi amigo Puig a quien no veo desde hace años.* *in that way I'll be able to visit my friend Puig whom I haven't seen for years.*
- Do not worry about the strange pronunciation of *Puig*, which is in fact quite a common Catalan surname.
- 29 *¿...y nos damos una vuelta juntos?* *...and go for a stroll together?*
- 30 *Pasaremos a recogerle a la oficina de Puig.* *We'll come along to Puig's office to fetch you.*
Pasar requires a before a following infinitive (App. 10b).

Al zoo con don Ramón *To the zoo with don Ramón*

- 31 *Gracias por la excelente taza de café.* *Thanks for the excellent cup of coffee.*
- 32 *¿Te importaría acompañarme a dar una vuelta por el zoo?* *Would you mind accompanying me on a stroll around the zoo?*
- 33 *Tenemos algunos ejemplares bastante interesantes.* *We've got some quite interesting specimens.*
- 34 *He oído decir que tenéis un mono albino que ha causado mucha sensación.* *I've heard (tell) that you have an albino monkey which has caused a great sensation.*
oír decir: *to hear (tell)*
- 35 *Es popularísimo.* *It's very popular.*
 The ending *ísimo* is often added to adjectives to give the meaning of *very*, *most*; e.g. *muchísimo:* *very much* (L24, N46). In fact that is the only way of expressing *very much* in Spanish, as *muy* is not used with *mucho*.
- 36 *Ven por aquí y de paso te enseñaré las fieras.* *Come this way and on the way I'll show you the wild beasts.*
de paso: *on the way*
- 37 *¡Qué variedad!* *What a variety!*
- 38 *Tenéis de todo: leones, tigres, panteras y osos.* *You've got everything: lions, tigers, panthers and bears.*

- 39 Veo que también tenéis elefantes. *I see that you've also got elephants.*
- 40 aunque personalmente prescindiría de ellos. *Although personally I should do without them.*
prescindir de: to do without
- 41 Cuesta demasiado mantenerlos. *It costs too much to keep them.*
- 42 ¿Qué águila tan imponente! *What an imposing eagle!*
- 43 Tenéis un sin fin de pájaros. *You have a lot of birds.*
- 44 Tengo un interés personal en adquirir aves raras. *I have a personal interest in acquiring rare birds.*
Ave can be used to refer in a general sense to birds of all kinds including birds of prey, fowls etc. Pájaro cannot be used in this way.
- 45 Acabamos de recibir un envío importante de Colombia. *We've just received an important consignment from Colombia.*
Notice the spelling and pronunciation of Colombia.
- 46 Entre otras cosas ese loro que ves ahí. *Amongst other things that parrot that you can see there.*
- 47 No sabes cuánto me alegro de haber venido. *You don't know how pleased I am (how much I am pleased) to have come.*

Las señoras regresan de la zarzuela. *The ladies return from the musical play.*

- 48 ¿Serías tan amable de volver al teatro a recoger mis gafas? *would you be so kind as to go back to the theatre to fetch my glasses?*
- a Serías is the tú form of the conditional of ser
- b ser tan amable de: to be so kind as
- 49 Probablemente se cayeron debajo de la butaca. *They probably fell under the seat.*
- a Cayeron is the third person plural form of the preterite of caer: to fall. The third person singular form is cayó (App. 4f). This change from i to y, similar to that in certain gerunds (L23, N52), also occurs with creer — creyó, creyeron; leer — leyó, leyeron and oír — oyó, oyeron (App. 4f). The reason is that in Spanish you only find i coming between two other vowels when it is stressed and hence carries an accent: e.g. leía, caía; creía; oía. Otherwise the i changes to y.
- b La butaca as well as being used for a seat in the theatre or cinema also means armchair.
- 50 He pasado una velada estupenda. *I've spent a splendid evening.*
Velada refers to an evening's entertainment or social gathering.
- 51 Yo diría que "La Verbena de la Paloma" es mi zarzuela favorita entre las más populares. *I would say that of the most popular ones "La Verbena de la Paloma" is my favourite musical (play).*

- 52 En la representación de hoy, tanto don Hilarión como Casta y Susana estaban muy bien logrados. *In today's performance, both don Hilarión and Casta and Susana were very well played.*
tanto...como: both...and
- 53 Estoy de acuerdo. *I agree.*
- 54 Has tardado un siglo. *You've been a century.*
- 55 La acomodadora fue muy amable y me ayudó a buscarlas. *The usherette was very kind and helped me to look for them.*
Ayudar: to help requires a before a following infinitive (App. 10b).
- 56 Creía que me esperarías en la puerta. *I thought you would be waiting for me at the door.*
Be careful with the spelling and pronunciation of the íais ending on the vosotros form of the conditional tense.
- 57 Me niego a dar otro paso. *I refuse to take another step.*
Negarse(ie): to refuse requires a before a following infinitive (App. 10b).

Part three

Marisa quiere ser moderna. *Marisa wants to be modern.*

- 58 Le sugiero que vaya al departamento de abrigos más...clásicos. *I suggest that you go to the department of...more classical coats.*
- 59 aquí sólo tenemos las tallas 40, 42 y 44. *here we only have sizes 40, 42 and 44.*
- 60 ¿Está Vd. sugiriendo que me compre una talla mayor? *Are you suggesting that I should buy a larger size?*
As you can see here mayor can be used in place of más grande when referring to sheer size, although that is often not the case (L20, N12).

Orgullo catalán *Catalan pride*

- 61 Creí que vendrías ayer o al menos que vendrías tú. *I thought that you would (both) come yesterday or at least that you would come.*
Vendrías and vendrías are respectively the vosotros and tú forms of the conditional of venir.
- 62 Importantísimo. *Most important.*
Notice that when ísimo is added to an adjective ending in a vowel, e.g. importante, mucho, that final vowel is dropped.
- 63 Agustín y yo estuvimos discutiendo de fútbol seis horas. *Agustín and I were arguing about football for six hours.*
- a Discutir can mean to argue as well as to discuss.
- b There is no need to use a word for for in expressions of time in Spanish.

Lección veintiséis Lesson twenty-six

... Siete de julio San Fermín
... Seventh of July San Fermín

Part one

What happens

Manuel describes what happens during the famous San Fermín festival which takes place in Pamplona every July. After finishing filming in Pamplona he went to stay with some relations who have a farm in the mountains and did some fishing.

Part two

Filmando en Pamplona *Filming in Pamplona*

Manuel and his colleague Joaquín discuss the film they have been making. Joaquín has to return to Barcelona but Manuel will be going to stay with his relations on their farm.

En la granja *On the farm*

Eusebio, Manuel's cousin, shows him round the farm. To his surprise Manuel finds that he is enjoying himself and admits as much to Eusebio.

El "pescador" *The "fisherman"*

Manuel tells Pilar that he is all set to get up early the following morning for a day's fishing. She will prepare breakfast and a picnic for him.

Después de la pesca *After fishing*

A couple of small trout is the sole outcome of Manuel's fishing.

Part three

Doña Sabelotodo *Lady Know-all*

The concierge of the block of flats knows everyone's business even to the extent of informing one tenant that he has been promoted.

New words in this lesson

el alimento food
el animal animal
el anzuelo hook
el balcón balcony

el burro donkey
el cabezudo "big-head"
el cebo bait
el cerdo pig

el corral yard
el cuello neck
el chorizo garlic sausage
el descanso rest
el deseo wish, desire
el despertador alarm clock
el espectador spectator
el establo cowshed
el festejo festivity
el fondo background
el gallo cockerel
el ganso goose (gander)
el gigante giant
el granjero farmer
el inquilino tenant
el jaleo noise, row
el jamón ham
el mozo lad, youth
el navarro Navarrese
el objetivo object, aim
el pañuelo handkerchief
el pato duck (drake)
el patrón patron saint
el pavo turkey
el potro colt
el pozo well
el salmón salmon
el soportal colonnade
el traslado transfer
el vecino neighbour

la animación life, excitement
la boina beret
la bota wineskin, leather bottle
la cabra goat
la caña fishing rod
las Casas Consistoriales town hall, etc.
la cesta basket
la cintura waist
la clase sort, kind
la cuadra stable
la danza dance
la emoción emotion
la faja sash
la fiesta celebration
la gallina hen
la granja farm
la granjera farmer's wife
la lástima pity
la merienda picnic

la montaña mountain(s)
la muchedumbre crowd
la muralla city wall
la noticia piece of news
la paciencia patience
la portera concierge
la ternera calf
la toma take, sequence
la trucha trout
la vaca cow
la vecina neighbour
la virtud virtue
la yegua mare

a la brasa (charcoal) grilled, barbecued
alguno (neg.) not one
atado tied
atañado dressed up
encantado delighted
escarlata scarlet
esencial essential
feroz ferocious
hermoso beautiful
inmenso immense
levantado up (and about)
mío of mine
pamplonica of Pamplona
sabroso tasty
sano healthy
sincero sincere, honest
vecino neighbouring
el vuestro yours

acordarse (ue) de to remember
animarse to get excited
carecer de to lack
concluir to conclude, finish
consistir en to consist of
correr to run
dar de comer to feed
despertar (ie) to arouse, awaken
ejecutar to perform, carry out
encantar to delight
encerrar (ie) to lock up
envidiar to envy
filmar to film
haber de to have to
invitar to invite
llenar to fill
prestar to lend
salir de pesca to go off fishing

soltar(ue) to let loose
terminarse to come to an end
tomarse to take, have
verse to find oneself, see oneself

lo esencial the essential thing

por tierras de in the land of

además moreover, to boot
al fondo in the background
de al lado (from) next door
de otro modo otherwise
de vuelta back, back home

en absoluto at all
en principio at/in the beginning,
at first
por último finally

quienes who

¿por dónde? where?

buena suerte good luck
no es que it's not that
otra vez será there'll be another
time
peor para ella all the worse for her
¡qué va! not at all!

Notes

Part one

- 1 han concluido las fiestas de San Fermín. *The San Fermín celebrations have come to an end.*
San Fermín is the patron saint of Pamplona, a city in Navarre to the north of Madrid. The celebrations in his honour begin on the seventh of July and last a week. They are primarily centred around bull fighting.
- 2 San Fermín es el patrón de los navarros. *San Fermín is the patron saint of the Navarrese.*
Los navarros are the inhabitants of Navarra: *Navarre*.
- 3 Para celebrarlo se organizan toda clase de festejos. *All kinds of festivities are arranged to celebrate it.*
toda clase de: all kinds of
- 4 El más famoso consiste en soltar los toros por las calles. *The most famous consists of letting the bulls loose in the streets.*
a consistir en: to consist of
b Por is frequently used to mean in when referring to movement within a place (App.16b).
- 5 Éstos, al verse libres, corren detrás de los valientes mozos pamplonicos, quienes van ataviados con camisa y pantalones blancos y boina negra. *The latter, on finding (seeing) themselves free, run behind the brave Pamplona youths, who are dressed up in white shirt and trousers and a black beret.*
a Éstos: the former refers here to los toros.
b Pamplonica is the adjective used to describe a person from Pamplona. Note that it ends in a.
c van ataviados con: are dressed up in Remember that it is often used in personal descriptions (L21, N13).

6 Atado al cuello llevan un pañuelo escarlata, y en la cintura una faja, también escarlata. *Tied round the neck they wear a scarlet handkerchief, and round the waist a sash, also scarlet.*

7 El objetivo es recorrer las calles de la ciudad, despertando la emoción de los espectadores en aceras y balcones. *The aim is to run through the streets of the city, arousing the emotions of the spectators on (the) pavements and balconies.*

Despertar(ie): to arouse, awaken is used in the reflexive form despertarse when the sense is of waking up naturally without being woken by something or someone else. Note the difference between me desperté: *I woke up* and me despertó: *he woke me up*.

8 Por último, la muchedumbre regresa a la plaza, donde se encierra a los toros. *Finally, the crowd returns to the bull ring, where the bulls are locked up.*

You may well have noticed by now that the passive (the verb *to be* and a past participle) is avoided in Spanish wherever possible. The usual way of doing so is by using *se* (App. 14a), although you have to be careful that in doing so you do not end up with a reflexive verb and thus change the meaning. Here, for example, to avoid saying *los toros son encerrados: the bulls are locked up* (i.e. the action of someone locking them up) we have to say *se encierra a los toros: one locks up the bulls*. If we said *los toros se encierran* the meaning would be *the bulls lock themselves up*. Remember that *ser* + past participle = ACTION and *estar* + past participle = STATE (result of an action) (L23, N2a).

9 Durante varias noches nadie piensa en acostarse. *For several nights nobody thinks about going to bed.*

Remember that *pensar* followed by an infinitive means *to think about* (i.e. to have in one's mind.) (App.10d).

10 Se come el sabroso chorizo a la brasa, y se bebe vino por las típicas botas. *One eats the tasty grilled garlic sausage, and drinks wine out of the typical wineskins.*

a a la brasa: grilled This refers to a charcoal grill.

b Una bota is a leather wineskin or bottle.

11 Al terminarse las fiestas salí para la montaña. *When the celebrations came to an end I set off for the mountains.*

a Remember that *al* followed by an infinitive is the equivalent of the English *on* followed by the gerund of a clause introduced by *when* (App. 7h).

b The singular form *la montaña* is used to refer to mountain country in general as opposed to lower ground when in English we use the plural form *mountains*.

12 No es que me gustara la idea en principio. *It isn't that I liked the idea at first,*

- a No es que is followed by the subjunctive (App. 9c).
- b **Gustara** is the third person singular form of the imperfect subjunctive of **gustar**. The imperfect subjunctive is used in much the same way and for the same reasons as the present subjunctive except, of course, that it refers to events in the past. You have, in fact, already come across two imperfect subjunctive forms in **quisiera**: *I'd like* and **hubiera** (L23, N11a, b). To form the imperfect subjunctive of any verb you take the third person plural form of the preterite, e.g. **gustaron**, **quisieron**, **hubieron** and replace **ron** with the following endings: **ra**; **ras**; **ra**; **ramos**; **rais**; **ran**. (App. 1m). E.g. **quisiera**; **quisieras**; **quisiera**; **quisiéramos**; **quisierais**; **quisieran**. Note the accent on the **nosotros** form to indicate that the stress remains on the **e**. Likewise on **gustáramos** and **hubiéramos**.
- 13 pero hube de visitar a unos parientes granjeros. *but I had to visit some relations (who are) farmers.*
- a Hube is the **yo** form of the preterite of **haber** (App. 4f).
- b Haber de: *to have to* expresses a feeling of obligation to do something.
- 14 Me dedicué al descanso, a los alimentos sanos y a pescar. *I devoted myself to rest, healthy food(s) and fishing.*
- 15 Es una región de hermosos ríos donde abundan las truchas y los salmones. *It's a region of beautiful rivers where trout and salmon abound.*

Part two

Filmando en Pamplona *Filming in Pamplona*

- 16 ¿Habrán llegado ya a la plaza de toros? *Will they have reached the bull ring already?*
Habrán llegado is the third person plural form of the future perfect tense of **llegar**. This tense is made up of the future tense of **haber** and the past participle of the other verb concerned (App. 1j).
- 17 De otro modo habría más jaleo por las calles. *Otherwise there'd be more noise in the streets.*
Habría: *there would be* is the conditional form of **hay** (App. 8).
- 18 Espero que haya salido bien la toma de los toros con las Casas Consistoriales al fondo. *I hope that the take of the bulls with the Town Hall in the background has come out well.*
la toma: *take, film sequence*
- 19 También sería interesante que salieran bien los gigantes y cabezudos. *It would also be interesting if (that) the giants and big heads came out well.*
- a Salieran, the third person plural form of the imperfect subjunctive of **salir** (N12b), is used here after **sería interesante que**. As well as reflecting happenings in the past, the imperfect subjunctive is also used with a conditional sense as here. In such cases the main verb, here **sería**, will normally

be in the conditional tense (App. 9r); e.g. **sería mejor que vinieras solo**: *it would be better for you to come (that you come) alone.*

- b Gigantes and cabezudos frequently feature in street processions in Spanish festivals. Gigantes would be people on stilts and cabezudos wearing outrageously large heads.
- 20 A mí me gustó mucho esa danza que ejecutaron ante la catedral. *I liked very much that dance that they performed in front of the cathedral.*
- 21 Me encantan sus murallas y su plaza de soportales. *I love its walls and its square with colonnades.*
Muralla is normally only used to refer to the walls of a city or castle.
- 22 Es una lástima que se acaben las fiestas y haya que volver a Barcelona. *It's a pity that the celebrations are coming to an end and one has to return to Barcelona.*
- a The subjunctive is used after **es (una) lástima que** (App. 9a).
- b Hay que is an impersonal expression which, like **haber de** (N13b), expresses an obligation. It is very often the equivalent of the English *one has to*.
- 23 Yo me quedo por tierras de Navarra otra semana. *I'm staying in Navarre for another week.*
por tierras de: *in, in the lands of* Notice **por** meaning *in* (App. 16b).
- 24 ¡Ah, no sabía que pensaras tomarte unas vacaciones! *Ah, I didn't know that you intended to take a holiday!*
- a The subjunctive is used after **saber**: *to know* when it is used negatively.
- b Pensaras is the **tú** form of the imperfect subjunctive of **pensar** (App. 1m). Remember that **pensar**, when followed directly by an infinitive means *to intend* (App. 10a).
- 25 unos parientes míos tienen una granja en un pueblecito al lado de Arive *some relatives of mine have a farm in a little village near Arive*
Arive is a village in Navarre.
- 26 y me invitaron a que pasara unos días con ellos. *and invited me to spend a few days with them.*
Pasara, the **yo** form of the imperfect subjunctive of **pasar**, is used here following **me invitaron a que**. Verbs of inviting are followed by the subjunctive (App. 9i).
- 27 que te diviertas entre las gallinas. *(may you) enjoy yourself among the hens.*
- En la granja *On the farm*
- 28 Granjero *Farmer*
- 29 Aquí no hay animación alguna. *Here there is no life at all.*
- a animación: *life, excitement*
- b Alguno when placed after the noun it describes, and with **no** preceding the verb, takes on a negative meaning. Used in this way it is more emphatic than **ninguno** (App. 15d).

- 30 voy a ser te completamente sincero. *I'm going to be completely honest with you.*
- 31 No tenía deseo alguno de venir, pero ahora estoy encantado. *I had no desire at all to come, but now I'm delighted.*
Here again we have *alguno* following its noun (N29b).
- 32 Voy a dar de comer a los animales. *I'm going to feed the animals.*
dar de comer: to feed
- 33 ¿Por dónde empezamos? *Where shall we start?*
- 34 Ven al corral y así podrás ver las aves. *Come to the yard and you'll be able to see the fowls.*
Ven, here, is of course the tú command form of *venir* (App. 4b).
- 35 ¡Caramba qué gansos más grandes! *Good gracious what large geese!*
- 36 Parecen un poco feroces. *They look rather ferocious.*
Feroces is the plural of *feroz*.
- 37 Y también tenéis patos y pavos. *And you've also got ducks and turkeys.*
- 38 Éste debe ser el gallo que me despertó esta mañana. *This must be the cockerel that woke me up this morning.*
- 39 es nuestro mejor despertador. *he's our best alarm clock.*
- 40 se animan los del corral vecino. *those in the neighbouring yard get excited.*
Los de stands for los gallos de. Remember el de: *the one (of)* (App. 14i).
- 41 ¡Qué cerdos más inmensos! *What immense pigs!*
- 42 Nunca he visto otros como los vuestros. *I've never seen any others like yours.*
Los vuestros is a possessive pronoun like el mío, el tuyo etc. (L21, N5, 27) (App. 14g), standing in place of *vuestros cerdos*.
- 43 Vais a tener buenos jamones. *You're going to have good hams.*
Jamones is the plural of *jamón*.
- 44 Aquí, junto al pozo, está la cuadra con la yegua, el potro y el burro por supuesto. *Here, next to the well, is the stable with the mare, colt and donkey of course.*
- 45 Aquí está el establo. *Here's the cowshed.*
Notice that *establo* does not mean *stable*.
- 46 sólo tenemos siete vacas y algunas terneras; pero este año compré bastantes corderos y cabras. *we only have seven cows and some calves; but this year I bought quite a few sheep and goats.*
- 47 empiezo a envidiarte, *I'm beginning to envy you,*

El "pescador" *The "fisherman"*

- 48 mañana quisiera salir de pesca. *tomorrow I'd like to go off fishing.*
a As you now know *quisiera* is the *yo* form of the imperfect subjunctive of *querer* (N12b). In fact the imperfect subjunctive can always be used in-

stead of the conditional tense (App. 9t). The reason why *quisiera* is used so frequently is probably to avoid any confusion between *querria: I'd like* (conditional) and *quería: I wanted* (imperfect).

- b salir de pesca: *to go off fishing* ir de pesca: *to go fishing*
- 49 Granjera *Farmer's wife*
- 50 No te preocupes en absoluto. *Don't worry at all.*
- 51 Ya estaré levantada y te prepararé el desayuno y la merienda para todo el día. *I'll be up already and I'll prepare you breakfast and a picnic for the whole day.*
The reflexive verb *levantarse* refers to the act of getting up. As Manuel says *me levantaré temprano: I'll get up early*. However the past participle *levantado* used with *estar* refers to the state of being up. Notice the past participle has to agree with the subject of *estar* and as the farmer's wife is speaking it must be *levantada* in this sentence (L23, N2a, 33a) (App. 11b).

- 52 Ya tengo la caña preparada con el anzuelo y hasta el cebo. *I already have my fishing rod prepared with the hook and even the bait.*
Notice the difference between *he preparado la caña: I've prepared my fishing rod* and *tengo la caña preparada: I have my fishing rod prepared*. In English we show the difference by the position of the past participle *prepared*, but in Spanish there is a difference in the verb used (*tener* and not *haber*), and the past participle has to agree with the noun it describes when *tener* is used.
- 53 ¿tienes alguna cesta que me puedas prestar? *have you got a basket you can lend me?*
Manuel implies that any basket will do and so we have the subjunctive after an indefinite antecedent
- 54 Ésta quizás te sirva. A ver si la llenas. *Perhaps this one will do for you. Let's see if you fill it.*

Después de la pesca *After fishing*

- 55 ya estás de vuelta. *you're back already.*
estar de vuelta: to be back
- 56 Habrás tenido buen día. *You'll have had a good day.*
Habrás tenido is the tú form of the future perfect tense of *tener* (N16).
- 57 ¡Qué va! Mira en la cesta: un par de ellas y además pequeñas. *Not at all! Look in the basket: a couple of them and small ones moreover.*
- 58 Las truchas desaparecen en cuanto me ven. *The trout disappear as soon as they see me.*
En cuanto: *as soon as* is only followed by the subjunctive when future time is implied. It is not here.
- 59 Otra vez será. *There'll be another time.*

- 60 Ya sabes que lo esencial en un pescador es tener paciencia. *You know that the essential thing for a fisherman is to have patience.*
lo esencial: *the essential thing* (App. 12c).
- 61 Virtud de la que carezco. *A virtue which I lack.*
carecer de: *to lack, be lacking in*

Part three

Doña Sabelotodo *Lady Know-all*

- 62 Portera *Concierge*
This is the person who lives in the basement or on the ground floor of a block of flats and who is in attendance all day. She knows all the tenants, keeps the hall and stairs clean, distributes the mail and assists generally.
- 63 Su novia ya no se acuerda de Vd. *Your girl friend is already forgetting you (doesn't remember you).*
acordarse de: *to remember*
- 64 Inquilino *Tenant*
- 65 A su vecina de enfrente la ha dejado el marido. *Your neighbour opposite's husband has left her.*
de enfrente: *opposite*
- 66 Y su vecino de al lado ha pedido el traslado para Barcelona. *And your neighbour next door has asked for a transfer to Barcelona.*
de al lado: *next, next door*
- 67 Comprendo que lo haya hecho. *I'm not surprised that he's done so.*
When comprehend: *to understand* has the meaning of *to not be surprised* it is followed by the subjunctive (App. 9a).
- 68 Gracias por tan buena noticia. *Thanks for such good news.*
Una noticia refers to one piece of news. The news in general is translated by las noticias.

Lección veintisiete Recorriendo Barcelona Lesson twenty-seven Touring Barcelona

What happens

Part one

Doña Julia persuaded don Ramón to accompany her on a sightseeing walk round Barcelona. She describes its geographical position and tells us more about the interesting buildings and quarters of the city.

Part two

Un alto en el camino *A stop on the way*

Feeling a little tired after walking around all morning don Ramón and doña Julia stop for a cold drink at a café opposite the Liceo opera house.

¿Dónde almorzamos? *Where shall we have lunch?*

They decide to go to a typical eating-house near the harbour or in the fisherman's quarter of Barceloneta.

Recordando... *Remembering...*

Don Ramón and doña Julia find themselves in the very restaurant they went to on their honeymoon twenty-three years earlier. Don Ramón suggests a visit to the opera but is reminded that the Liceo is closed during the summer.

Part three

Dos argentinos "recorren" España. *Two Argentinians "tour" Spain.*

After two months in Catalonia Héctor and Óscar lack both time and money to see the rest of Spain. Consequently Óscar suggests that a visit to the Spanish Village will enable Héctor to write the article required by his newspaper.

New words in this lesson

el alto stop, halt
el apetito appetite
el argentino Argentinian
el contraste contrast
el distrito district
el estilo style
el extremo side
el figón eating-house
el labio lip
el lápiz pencil
el lápiz de labios lipstick
el monte mount
el recorrido tour
el reportaje report
los restos remains
el viejo old chap

la arquitectura architecture

la bullabesa bouillabaisse
la cigala king-size prawn
la clase media middle class
la horchata chufa nut drink
la luna de miel honeymoon
la miel honey
la ojeada look, glance
la ópera opera
la romántica romantic

a la plancha griddled
ancho wide
antiguo old, ancient
cada each
cerrado closed
completo full, complete
diferente different
diverso different, various

económico economical
 europeo European
 fresquísimo very fresh
 gótico Gothic
 helado chilled, iced
 incurable incurable
 medieval mediaeval
 municipal municipal
 planeado planned, laid out
 recto straight
 sagrado holy
 tremendo tremendous

agradar to please
 almorzar(ue) to have lunch
 contar(ue) con to have
 echar una ojeada to have a look,
 glance
 hacer tiempo to make time
 hallarse to be situated, found
 ir pensando to be thinking

Notes

Part one

- 1 Ayer logré persuadir a Ramón, para que hiciéramos un recorrido a pie por Barcelona. *Yesterday I managed to persuade Ramón (so) that we should make a tour of (through) Barcelona on foot.*
- a You will recall that the subjunctive has to be used after para que (App. 90). As the main verb here, logré, is preterite and the events described all take place in the past, the imperfect subjunctive hiciéramos is used.
- b A pie means on foot when motion is involved. If you wish to indicate that someone is standing as opposed to sitting, lying etc. you must use de pie.
- 2 Barcelona se halla no muy lejos de los Pirineos. *Barcelona is situated not very far from the Pyrenees.*
 Hallarse is frequently used instead of estar or estar situado when referring to geographical location.
- 3 y cuenta con el mar a un extremo y las montañas al otro. *and has the sea on one side and mountains on the other.*

lograr to manage
 llevar to stay, be
 mandar to send
 persuadir to persuade
 probar(ue) to taste, try
 recordar(ue) to recall
 rodear to surround
 tener inconveniente to object, mind

frente a opposite, facing

anónimamente anonymously
 a vuelo de pájaro on a flying visit
 de perlas an excellent idea
 lo alto de the top of
 me agrada I like, I fancy
 precisamente precisely
 sumamente extremely

Contar con, which you have already met meaning to count on (L8, N42), is sometimes used in circumstances like this when describing the attributes of a place.

- 4 La vista de Barcelona desde lo alto del Monte Tibidabo es ya famosa. *The view of Barcelona from the top of Mount Tibidabo is famous.*
- a Notice the use of the neuter article lo with the adjective alto: high to translate the top (App.12c).
- b Mount Tibidabo overlooks Barcelona and can be seen from almost any part of the city.
- 5 Su arquitectura es sumamente variada. *Its architecture is extremely varied.*
- 6 Los edificios anónimamente europeos del Ensanche, ofrecen curioso contraste con los del Barrio Gótico. *The anonymously European buildings of the Ensanche offer a curious contrast with those of the Gothic quarter.*
 El Ensanche is the modern part of Barcelona while the Gothic quarter is the old part of the city surrounding the cathedral.
- 7 Aquéllos son modernos y éstos medievales. *The former are modern and the latter mediaeval.*
 Aquéllos: those, i.e. the former éstos: these, i.e. the latter Aquél and éste are used respectively for the former and the latter (App.14f).
- 8 En Barcelona hay tres partes diferentes: *Barcelona has three different parts:*
- 9 la parte antigua, en la que se hallan los restos de las murallas, the old part, in which the remains of the city walls are to be found,
 a Antiguo means old in the sense of ancient.
- b Remember the use of el que, la que after prepositions (App.14h).
- c Here hallarse has a more literal translation but the general idea of location remains the same (N2).
- 10 el distrito donde vive la clase media, the district where the middle class live,
- 11 y los viejos barrios municipales que rodean la ciudad. *and the old municipal boroughs which surround the city.*
 These would be districts with some control over local affairs.
- 12 De allí continuamos por las Ramblas. *From there we continued along the Ramblas.*
 Las Ramblas is a tree lined walk leading from Plaza de Cataluña to the harbour. It is famous for stalls selling books, newspapers, flowers and pets.
- 13 Pasamos el monumento a Colón *We passed the monument to Columbus*
 This monument overlooks the harbour.

- 14 Terminamos almorzando en un restaurante típico de la Barceloneta. *We ended up by having lunch in a typical restaurant in Barceloneta.* Remember that in Spanish you must not use *por* with a gerund to translate *by doing something* (L23, N31a).
- 15 Por la tarde estuvimos en Montjuich y el Pueblo Español. *In the afternoon we were in Montjuich and the Spanish Village.*
- a Montjuich is the part of Barcelona where the international trade fair is held. It also has a very large amusement park. Montjuich is a Catalan word and hence its strange pronunciation.
- b El Pueblo Español is a specially constructed showpiece offering examples of typical architectural styles from all over Spain.
- 16 Es un lugar que les ofrecerá diversos ejemplos de la arquitectura. *It's a place which will offer you various (different) examples of architecture,* si desean conocer España a vuelo de pájaro. *if you want to get to know Spain on a flying visit.*

Part two

Un alto en el camino *A stop on the way*

- 18 Hemos tenido una mañana bastante completa. *We've had quite a full morning.*
- 19 ¿Qué dirías si sugiriera que nos sentáramos a tomar algo? *What would you say if I suggested that we sit down and have something?*
- a ¿Qué dirías si sugiriera...? When the verb in the main clause of a sentence is in the conditional tense, e.g. *dirías*, the verb in the clause introduced by *si* must be in the imperfect subjunctive, e.g. *sugiriera* (App. 9s).
- b Verbs of suggesting are followed by a subjunctive. As *sugiriera* is itself in the imperfect subjunctive the verb that depends on it must also be an imperfect subjunctive. Hence *nos sentáramos* (App. 9r).
- c Sentarse requires a *when* followed by an infinitive.
- 20 Me parecería de perlas. *It would seem an excellent idea to me.* This is quite an idiomatic expression. *Perla* means *pearl*.
- 21 Podríamos sentarnos en esa terraza que hay frente al Liceo. *We could sit on that terrace which (there) is opposite the Liceo.* El Liceo is the opera house situated in the Ramblas.
- 22 Vamos a tomarnos una horchata. *Let's have horchata.* Horchata is a drink made from chufa nuts. It is quite sweet and should be well chilled.
- 23 El andar tanto me ha dado una sed tremenda. *Walking so much has given me a tremendous thirst.* Sometimes the infinitive of a verb takes on the role of a noun as has

- happened in this sentence with *andar*. In such cases the definite article *el* is used with the infinitive (App. 7h). The preterite of *andar* is a pretérito grave (App. 4f).
- 24 ¿Podría traernos dos horchatas heladas? *Could you bring us two chilled horchatas?*
- 25 Me alegro de que pidieras horchata. *I'm glad you ordered horchata.* As you can see from this sentence it does not necessarily follow that a subjunctive which depends on a verb in the present tense will be a present subjunctive. Meaning comes into it as well. If *doña Julia* had said *me alegro de que pidas horchata* the meaning would have been *I'm glad you're ordering horchata*.
- 26 Llevamos en España más de dos meses. *We've been in Spain more than two months*
- a Llevar may be used instead of *estar* in such expressions of time.
- b The present tense of the verb is used as they are still in Spain and are not yet leaving (App. 7a).
- 27 Está estupenda y fresquísima. *It's excellent and very fresh.* When *ísimo* is added to an adjective ending in *co* the *c* changes to *qu*.
- 28 Voy a pedirme otra. *I'm going to order myself another one.*
- 29 Aún no la he probado. *I haven't tried it yet.*
- 30 El caso es que este vaso está sucio de lápiz de labios. *The fact is that this glass is dirty with lipstick.* el lápiz: pencil el labio: lip
- 31 Este camarero tiene aspecto simpático. *This waiter is pleasant looking (has a kind appearance).*
- 32 No tendrá inconveniente en cambiártelo. *He won't mind (will have no objection in) changing it for you.*
- ¿Dónde almorzamos? *Where shall we have lunch?*
- 33 Habrá que ir pensando en ir a comer. *We shall have to be thinking about going to eat.*
- a Habrá que is the future tense form of *hay que* (L26, N17).
- b Ir pensando is an alternative to *estar pensando*.
- 34 Yo, por lo menos, tengo un apetito excelente. *I, at least, have an excellent appetite.*
- 35 Pero todavía tenemos que hacer tiempo para echar una ojeada a la Sagrada Familia. *But we still have to make time to have a look at the Holy Family.* La Sagrada Familia is a massive, and as yet unfinished, church designed by Antonio Gaudí (1852-1926). It is a very distinctive landmark in Barcelona.

- 36 ¿Quieres que vayamos a uno de los restaurantes en La Diagonal...?
Do you want us to go to one of the restaurants in the Diagonal...?
 La Diagonal is the popular name for the fashionable Avenida del Generalísimo Franco.
- 37 Lo que más me gustaría es ir a uno de los figones del Puerto o a la Barceloneta. *What I would like to do most is go to one of the eating-houses in the harbour or to Barceloneta*
- 38 como hicimos en nuestro viaje de luna de miel. *as we did on our honeymoon trip.*
 la luna: moon la miel: honey
- 39 ¡Eres una romántica incurable! *You're an incurable romantic!*
- 40 En fin, también a mí me agrada la idea de volver allí y recordar viejos tiempos. *Anyway, I also fancy the idea of returning there and recalling old times.*

Recordando... Remembering...

- 41 Para empezar nos gustaría tomar unas cigalas a la plancha y luego querríamos una bullabesa. *To begin we'd like to have some griddled prawns and then we'd like a bouillabaisse.*
- a Querríamos es the nosotros form of the conditional tense of *querer*. From this we can deduce that the future tense is *querré, querrás*, etc. (App.4e).
- b Bullabesa is *bouillabaisse* or *fish soup* containing a mixture of shell fish and white fish.
- 42 Barcelona está muy bien planeada con sus calles anchas y rectas y su aspecto tan moderno. *Barcelona is very well planned with its wide, straight streets and its very modern appearance.*
- 43 A mí ese aspecto moderno es precisamente lo que menos me gusta. *That modern appearance is precisely what I like least.*
- 44 ¡quizás te gustaría que fuéramos al Liceo para ver una ópera. *perhaps you'd like us to go to the Liceo to see an opera.*
 The imperfect subjunctive *fuéramos* is used here following a verb of emotion, *gustar*, used in the conditional tense (N19a, b) (App.9r).
- 45 el Liceo está cerrado durante el verano. *the Liceo is closed during the summer.*
 Está cerrado is a state not an action (App.11b).
- 46 Claro, claro, lo mismo que nos ocurrió la última vez que estuvimos en Barcelona. *Of course, the same thing that happened to us the last time we were in Barcelona.*
 lo mismo: *the same thing*

Part three

- Dos argentinos "recorren" España. *Two Argentinians "tour" Spain.*
- 47 ya no nos queda ni tiempo ni dinero para ver el resto. *we've neither time nor money left to see the rest.*
- 48 tengo que mandar un reportaje a mi periódico de cada región. *I have to send a report to my paper of every region.*
- 49 Visitemos el "Pueblo Español". *Let's visit the "Spanish Village".*
- 50 Sí, viejo. *Yes, old chap.*
- 51 En una mañana podemos recorrer las calles y plazas de Aragón, Castilla, Baleares, Extremadura, etc. *In one morning we can tour the streets and squares of Aragon, Castile, the Balearics, Extremadura, etc.*
 Extremadura is a province in the south west of Spain, adjoining Portugal, to the north of Andalusia,
- 52 Me parece un sistema cómodo y económico de ver los diferentes estilos de arquitectura. *It seems a comfortable and economical way of seeing the different styles of architecture.*
- 53 Oscar tiene algo más que pájaros en la cabeza. *Oscar's got more than birds in his head.*
 This again is a rather idiomatic expression.

Lección veintiocho Lesson twenty-eight

Un accidente automovilístico A car accident

What happens

Part one

Diego describes the accident he and Teresa had one stormy night as they drove back from Andorra to Barcelona, as a result of which Teresa was detained in hospital overnight.

Part two

Diego da la noticia. *Diego gives the news.*

Doña María is very worried at the failure of Diego and Teresa to return and becomes really upset when Diego rings his father to let him know about the accident.

28 En la Casa de Socorro At the first-aid post

Diego's parents find that he has escaped more or less undamaged but that Teresa is suffering a little from shock and cuts.

Visitando a Teresa Visiting Teresa

Diego and his parents go in to see Teresa who will be staying in overnight. She declares that the fault was not Diego's: don Felipe hopes that it will be a lesson to them both.

Part three

La "pasión" secreta del señor Navarro Mr. Navarro's secret "passion"

Sr. Hernández thinks that Sr. Navarro is looking pale and, when he learns that Sr. Navarro has had a nose bleed after being struck by a ball, is quick to blame children. However, Sr. Navarro sustained his injury when playing pelota.

¡Tan aburrida! So bored!

Aurora and her husband visit Amparo. Aurora is so impressed by Amparo's house that the latter invites her to come and stay as she is always so bored.

New words in this lesson

el arañazo scratch
el árbol tree
el auxilio aid, assistance
el chaparrón downpour
el granizo hail
el loco madman
el padrino godfather
el permiso leave, time off
el relámpago (flash of) lightning
el susto shock
el trueno thunder (clap)
el viento wind
el volante steering-wheel

el alta hospital discharge certificate
la ambulancia ambulance
la calma calm
la carretera main road, highway
la Casa de Socorro first-aid post
la consideración consideration
la escena scene

la experiencia experience
la frente forehead
la imprudencia imprudence,
indiscretion
la incisión cut
la luna moon
la madrina godmother
la pasión passion
la pelota ball; "pelota"
la mejilla cheek
la prueba proof
la rodilla knee
la temeridad temerity
la tormenta storm

aburrido bored
aturdido dazed
automovilístico motoring
desfavorable unfavourable
ensordecedor deafening
hinchado swollen

hospitalizado kept in hospital,
hospitalized
inconsciente unconscious
izquierdo left
pálido pale
pobrecito poor
secreto secret
terrible terrible
unos cuantos a few
vivo alive

apoyarse to lean
beberse to drink up
chocar contra to hit
dar en to hit
desatarse to break (storm)
dominar to control
encontrarse(ue) to feel
escapar to escape
hacerse daño to hurt oneself
hacerse de noche to get dark
irse pasando to wear off
patinar to skid
pedir(i) permiso to ask for time off
ponerse en camino to set out
repetirse(i) to be repeated

Notes

Part one

- Me mandaron a Andorra para que hiciese un reportaje. *They sent me to Andorra to do a report.*
- Andorra is the tiny state in the Pyrenees between France and Spain, just a few hours drive from Barcelona.
- Hiciese is the *yo* form of an alternative imperfect subjunctive. It is used here after *para que*. This other imperfect subjunctive is used in exactly the same way as the imperfect subjunctive which you have already learned, except that it cannot be used in place of the conditional tense. To form it you replace the *ra* endings by *se*; *ses*; *se*; *semos*; *seis*; *sen*. Hence the two imperfect subjunctives of *hacer* are as follows:
ra form: *hiciera*; *hicieras*; *hiciera*; *hiciéramos*; *hicierais*; *hicieran*
se form: *hiciese*; *hicieses*; *hiciese*; *hiciésemos*; *hicieseis*; *hiciesen*
- Teresa pidió permiso en la oficina y vino conmigo. *Teresa took time off from the office and came with me*
- Pedir permiso really means to *ask for time off*; however once it has been granted you may translate it as *to take time off*.

seguir(i) sin to still have not
sentirse(i) con fuerzas to feel up
to it, feel strong enough
tomarlo por la tremenda to take it
to extremes, think the worst

precedido de preceded by

afuera outside
a la media hora de half an hour after
de todos modos at any rate
mañana por la mañana tomorrow
morning
moderadamente carefully
por la noche at night, in the night
por otra parte moreover

claro que si of course
¿cómo? what?
entre unas cosas y otras with one
thing and another
más de more than
nada anything
total so, in short

veintiocho twenty-eight

- b Vino is the third person singular form of the preterite of *venir* (App. 4f).
- 3 su *madrina* vive en Andorra. *her godmother lives in Andorra.*
The Spanish for *godfather* is el *padrino*.
- 4 Reconozco que la culpa de que ocurriese el accidente fue mía. *I recognise that the blame for the accident happening (that the accident happened) was mine.*
- a Ocurriese is the third person singular form of the *se* imperfect subjunctive used here after *la culpa de que* (App. 9l).
- b You will notice that *mía* is used here without *la*. It is quite common for possessive pronouns to be used without a definite article when they follow any part of *ser*; e.g. *es mío*: *it's mine* (App. 14g).
- 5 Teresa hubiera querido que nos quedásemos. *Teresa would have liked us to stay.*
In this sentence we have both *ra* and *se* imperfect subjunctives. *Hubiera* is used here instead of the conditional tense form *habría*, while *quedásemos* is used following a verb of wanting. Remember that if the main verb is a conditional any verb depending on it will be an imperfect subjunctive (App. 9r).
- 6 pero yo insistí en que volviésemos a Barcelona. *but I insisted on our returning (that we should return) to Barcelona.*
- 7 Total, que entre unas cosas y otras, se hizo de noche. *So, what with one thing and another, it got dark (night fell).*
- 8 A la media hora de salir se desató una tormenta. *Half an hour after leaving a storm broke.*
a la media hora de + infinitive: *half an hour after* + gerund
- 9 Había unos relámpagos impresionantes, y unos truenos ensordecedores. *There were fearful flashes of lightning, and deafening thunderclaps.*
- 10 Por otra parte cayó un chaparrón precedido de granizo. *Moreover there was (fell) a downpour preceded by hail.*
- 11 El resultado fue que patinó el coche. *The result was that the car skidded,*
12 y al no poder dominar el volante, chocamos contra un árbol. *and on being unable to control the steering-wheel, we hit a tree.*
chocar contra: to hit
- 13 No es que fuese nada serio, pero estuvimos inconscientes un rato. *It's not that it was anything serious, but we were unconscious for a moment.*
Fuese is the third person singular form of the imperfect subjunctive of *ser* (App. 4i).
- 14 Nos recogió un miembro de Auxilio en Carretera, que nos llevó en ambulancia a una Casa de Socorro. *A member of the Highway Assistance Association picked us up and (who) took us by ambulance to a first-aid post.*

- a Auxilio en Carretera is a voluntary organisation dedicated to helping motorists who are in any kind of trouble, be it a breakdown, accident, illness, etc.
- b Casa de Socorro is a first-aid post to which accident victims are taken for emergency treatment before being transferred, if necessary, to a hospital.
- 15 Yo escapé con unos arañazos y unas cuantas incisiones. *I escaped with some scratches and a few cuts,*
16 pero la pobrecita Teresa estuvo hospitalizada un día. *but poor Teresa was in hospital for a day.*
The diminutive ending *ita* in *pobrecita* indicates affection and not, in this case, smallness.

Part two

Diego da la noticia. *Diego gives the news.*

- 17 ¿...y Diego sigue sin llegar? *...and Diego still hasn't arrived?*
Notice the use of *seguir sin*: *to continue without* in the sense of *still not to have done something*.
- 18 No creo que se pusieran en camino por la noche. *I don't think they would set out at night.*
Remember that a verb of thinking or believing used negatively is followed by the subjunctive (App. 9c).
- 19 Sería una imprudencia salir en una noche como ésta, sin luna y con este viento. *It would be unwise to set out on a night like this, without a moon and with this wind.*
- 20 No creo que tuviesen esa temeridad... *I don't think they would have that temerity...*
- 21 Calma, mujer, calma. *Calm down, woman, calm down.*
- 22 déjame acabar la conversación... *let me finish the conversation...*
- 23 Como siempre lo ha tomado por la tremenda. *As usual she's taken it to extremes.*
tomarlo por la tremenda: to take it to extremes, think the worst

En la Casa de Socorro *At the first-aid post*

- 24 Mamá estoy vivo, no muerto. *Mum I'm alive, not dead,*
Estar is used with *vivo*: *alive* and *muerto*: *dead*.
- 25 así que por favor no hagas una escena. *so please don't make a scene.*
- 26 Tienes la mejilla izquierda muy hinchada. *Your left cheek is very swollen.*
It is customary to use *tener* and the definite article when describing parts of the body rather than *estar*; e.g. *tengo la pierna rota*: *my leg is broken*.

- 27 La prueba la tienes en que puedo volver a casa con vosotros. *You have the proof in the fact that I can return home with you.*
- 28 Por fortuna no ha sido mucho, excepto el susto. *Fortunately it wasn't much, except for the shock.*
- 29 Tiene una incisión en la frente y sangró bastante por la nariz. *She has a cut on her forehead and bled somewhat from the nose.*
- 30 ¡Claro que sí! Me duele un poco la rodilla derecha. *Of course! My right knee is hurting me a little.*
- 31 Apóyate en mi brazo. *Lean on my arm.*
- 32 No vayas a hacerte daño. *Don't go hurting yourself.*

Visitando a Teresa *Visiting Teresa*

- 33 ¿Cómo te encuentras ahora, Tere? *How do you feel now, Tere?*
 a Encontrarse(ue) is often used with the meaning to feel.
 b Tere is a short form of Teresa.
- 34 Un poco aturdida pero mejor, *a little dazed but better.*
- 35 Nos han prometido que mañana te darán el alta. *They've promised us that tomorrow they'll discharge you.*
 dar el alta: to discharge
- 36 Mis padres están ahí afuera. *My parents are (here) outside.*
 Do not confuse *afuera*, adverb, with the preposition *fuera de*.
- 37 ¿Quieres que pasen o no te sientes con fuerzas? *Do you want them to come in or don't you feel up to it?*
 sentirse con fuerzas: to feel up to it, feel strong enough
- 38 ¿Se te va pasando el susto? *Is the shock wearing off?*
- 39 Mañana por la mañana ya podré volver a casa. *Tomorrow morning I'll be able to return home.*
 mañana por la mañana: tomorrow morning
- 40 Me imagino que Diego iría conduciendo como un loco. *I imagine that Diego would be driving like a madman.*
 a Doña María is jumping to conclusions, hence the use of the conditional *iría* and not the imperfect *iba*.
 b It may be used as an alternative to *estar* to form the present continuous tense (App. 7f).
- 41 el pobre Diego conducía muy moderadamente, *poor Diego was driving very carefully,*
- 42 De todos modos que sea una lección para vosotros. *At any rate let it be a lesson for you.*
- 43 y no volváis a ponerlos en camino en condiciones tan desfavorables. *and don't set out again in such unfavourable conditions.*
 Remember *volver a* followed by the infinitive means to do something again.

- 44 No es probable que vuelva a repetirse la experiencia. *It's not likely that the experience will be repeated again.*
 a The subjunctive is used after both *es probable que* and *no es probable que* (App. 9b).
 b Repetir(se) follows the pattern outlined for *pedir* in the preterite (App. 2c).

Part three

- La "pasión" secreta del señor Navarro. *Mr. Navarro's secret "passion"*
- 45 Parece Vd. muy pálido. *You look very pale.*
- 46 He estado sangrando más de una hora. *I've been bleeding for more than one hour.*
 más que: *more than* becomes *más de* when followed by a number.
- 47 Una pelota me ha dado en la nariz. *A ball has hit me on the nose.*
 dar en: to hit
- 48 Estos niños de hoy son terribles. No tienen consideración. *These children of today are terrible. They have no consideration.*
- 49 Todos los jueves voy a jugar a la pelota, yo mismo. *Every Thursday I go to play pelota myself.*
 Pelota is the famous Basque wall game played with a hard ball struck by the hand, a bat or a basket strapped to the forearm.
- ¡Tan aburrida! *So bored!*
- 50 bebeos unas copas y divertíos. *have a few drinks and enjoy yourselves.*
 When you use the *vosotros* command form of a reflexive verb the final *d* is dropped before *os* is added; e.g. *levantaos*; *bebeos*. When the verb is an *ir* verb you have to place an accent on the *i* as in *divertíos* (App. 6d).

Lección veintinueve Lesson twenty-nine

Fiesta de despedida A farewell party

What happens

Part one

Doña María arranged a farewell party for the Muñoz family who are due to leave for Chile the following day. The party went off very well and now at three o'clock in the morning doña María is very tired.

Preparativos de última hora *Last minute preparations*

Teresa is helping doña María and doña Cristina with last minute preparations for the party. Doña Cristina wishes that Marisol was more like her brother Luis or Teresa.

Durante la fiesta *During the party*

Teresa introduces her father to don Ramón while don Felipe introduces Teresa's mother to doña Julia. Meanwhile Marisol is introduced to Teresa's brother Pepito and they seem to hit it off well together. Diego and Luis are not very keen on these family gatherings and tease Manuel about a certain widow who, according to them, has her eye on him.

Part three

¿A ver la Alhambra? *To see the Alhambra?*

Sr. Redondo, a Colombian of Spanish origin, would like to visit Spain and in particular Granada. However, his main reason does not appear to be to see the famous Alhambra.

Sabor artístico *Artistic taste*

Alicia has been visiting some of Spain's older cities and tells Rosa what she liked most in each of them.

New words in this lesson

el barco boat, ship
el canapé canapé
el caviar caviar
el copazo large glass
el champán champagne
el disco record
el invitado guest
el joven young person, youngster
el matrimonio de conveniencia marriage of convenience
el origen origin
el peso weight
el presentimiento feeling
el ratito little while
el sabor taste
el salmón ahumado smoked salmon

la boda wedding

la cabecita little head
la despedida farewell
la escultura sculpture
la esposa wife
la fiesta party
la granadina girl from Granada
la joya jewel
la lotería lottery
la preparación preparation

colombiano Colombian
cuadrado square
de despedida farewell
de familia family
de última hora last minute
excesivo excessive
furioso angry
genial brilliant

inactivo idle
modelo model
nuestro of ours
perezoso, perezosón lazy
provechoso useful, profitable
puesto fixed
redondo round

aprovechar to take advantage of
cansarse to tire, get tired
conocer sitios to get to know places
contestar to answer
dormirse(ue) to go to sleep
entusiasmarse to thrill
estar al llegar to be about to arrive
imitar to imitate
intentar to try
meterse to get to, hide oneself
mirarse a to look at oneself in
odiar to hate
parecerse a to resemble
permitir to allow, permit
secar to dry
sentar(ie) la cabeza to settle down
separarse to be separated
tocar to win
tratarse de to be about

en vez de instead of

definitivamente for good
de momento for the moment
de una vez at once
en primer lugar in the first place
mañana por la noche tomorrow evening

¿de qué? what...about?

buenas noches good night
encantado de... I'm very pleased to...
en contra de mis deseos against my wishes
es cierto that's true
no cabe duda there's no doubt
no me van nada they don't appeal to me
para mi gusto for my taste
¡por supuesto que no! of course not!

no...jamás never
tampoco neither

Notes

Part one

- 1 por una parte la fiesta de despedida, y por la otra la preparación del equipaje. *on the one hand the farewell party, and on the other getting the luggage ready.*
- 2 Salen de Barcelona mañana por la noche. *They leave Barcelona tomorrow night.*
- 3 Debido al excesivo peso harán el viaje en barco. *Due to the excessive weight they will make the journey by boat.*
- 4 Éramos veinte personas en total: *There were twenty of us all told* (lit: *we were twenty people in total*);
- 5 algunos otros amigos nuestros; *some other friends of ours*;
The possessive pronouns *mío, tuyo* etc. may be used following a noun to give the idea of *of mine, of yours* etc. In such cases they agree with the noun they follow e.g. *una primá mía: a cousin of mine; unos amigos míos: some friends of mine* (App. 14g).

- 6 Tuvimos una cena fría en el jardín. *We had a cold supper in the garden,*
 7 *que consistió en canapés de caviar, salmón ahumado, champán, etc.*
which consisted of caviar canapés, smoked salmon, champagne, etc.
 A great deal of wine of the champagne type is made in Catalonia.
 8 Después de la cena pusimos discos para que bailaran los jóvenes. *After*
supper we put some records on so that the youngsters could dance.
 a poner un disco: to put a record on
 b Remember that para que is followed by the subjunctive.
 c Jóvenes is the plural of joven: youth, youngster, young person. Notice
 there is no accent in the singular form.
 9 y me estoy durmiendo. *and I'm dropping off to sleep.*
 dormirse(ue): to go to sleep The gerund of dormir is durmiendo and
 this change from o to u also takes place with morir(ue): to die, giving us
 muriendo (App. 4c).
 10 ¡Buenas noches! *Good night!*

Part two

Preparativos de última hora *Last minute preparations*

- 11 Será mejor que descance un ratito, doña Cristina. *It'll be better for you*
to rest a little while, doña Cristina.
 You have already come across the diminutive ending ito in words like
 Luisito, Teresita, pobrecita etc. It indicates either something or some-
 body small, or somebody or something for which one feels affection.
 Un rato is a while and so un ratito is a little while. This ending is very
 common in Spanish but, whatever you do, do not invent your own words
 by putting ito on to any noun or adjective. Use only those which you
 have heard or seen used by native Spanish speakers.
 12 Yo no me canso jamás. *I never get tired.*
 no...jamás: never, not ever (App. 15a).
 13 Odio el estar inactiva. *I hate being idle.*
 This is another example of a verb taking on the function of a noun with
 el being used with the infinitive (L27, N23).
 14 Marisol, sal del baño de una vez y ven a ayudar, perezosona. *Marisol,*
come out of the bath at once and come and help, lazy girl.
 a Sal is the tú command form of salir (App. 4b).
 b The ending ón, feminine ona, is the opposite of ito (N11). It is used to
 denote something large or clumsy, or something for which one has little
 respect. Here doña Cristina is using it in a scolding way to Marisol.
 15 Diego ha tenido mucha suerte en conocerte. *Diego has been very lucky*
to meet you.
 tener suerte en: to be lucky to

- 16 No me imaginaba que tuviera tan buena opinión de mí. *I never imagined*
you had such a good opinion of me.
 a The subjunctive is used after imaginarse used negatively (App. 9c).
 b Notice that while doña Cristina addresses the much younger Teresa as tú,
 the latter affords her the respect due to her age and status by calling her
 Vd.
 17 No sería mala idea que Marisol te imitara e hiciera algo provechoso.
It wouldn't be a bad idea if Marisol were to imitate you and do some-
thing useful.
 No ser mala idea is followed by the subjunctive (App. 9c).
 18 en vez de tener tantos pájaros en su cabecita. *instead of having so much*
nonsense (lit: so many birds) in her dear little head.
 cabecita: (dear) little head Note the change from z to c before ita.
 19 Se pasa el día mirándose al espejo. *She spends the day looking at herself*
in the mirror.
 al espejo: in the mirror
 20 Eso son cosas de los dieciséis años. *That's how sixteen year olds are*
(lit: that's things of sixteen years).
 21 Ya verá Vd. como dentro de un par de años sentará la cabeza. *You'll*
see that in a couple of years she'll settle down.
 22 Esperemos que así sea. *Let's hope so.*
 23 ¡Ojalá se pareciera a su hermano! *If only she were like her brother!*
 Ojalá: if only is always followed by the subjunctive, more often than not
 the imperfect subjunctive (App. 9a). It is derived from an Arabic term
 meaning would to Allah that.
 24 Luisito ha sido siempre un chico modelo... *Luisito has always been a*
model child...
 25 ¿Te importaría secar esos platos? *Would you mind drying those plates?*
 26 ¡Por supuesto que no! *Of course not!*
 27 Los invitados estarán al llegar. *The guests must be about to arrive.*
 estar al llegar: to be about to arrive

Durante la fiesta *During the party*

- 28 Ven, papá, quiero presentarte al doctor Muñoz de quien ya te he hablado.
Come here, Dad, I want to introduce you to Dr. Muñoz whom I've already
told you about (about whom I've already told you).
 Notice that de must come before quien. It cannot be postponed until the
 end of the sentence as about can in English.
 29 Don Ramón, permítame presentarle a mi padre. *Don Ramón, allow me*
to introduce you to my father.
 There are a number of useful expressions in this lesson which you can
 use at social gatherings. Be careful, however, to keep in mind when using

them whether the person you are talking to is someone you address as tú or Vd, male or female.

30 Encantado, señor Claret. *Delighted, señor Claret.*

31 Sabe que salimos mañana por la noche, muy en contra de mis deseos. *You know that we're leaving tomorrow night, much against my wishes.*

32 A los españoles siempre nos cuesta el dejar España. *It's always hard for us Spaniards to leave Spain* (lit: *Leaving Spain always costs us Spaniards*).

a Costar(ue) is used again here with the meaning of *to be hard* when speaking of emotions (L24, N2).

b El dejar is another example of an infinitive used as a noun (N13).

33 Es cierto. *That's true.*

34 Tengo el presentimiento de que no tardaremos en regresar definitivamente. *I have the feeling that we won't be long in coming back for good.*

35 Así podremos conocer a nuestras respectivas esposas. *In that way we shall be able to meet our respective wives.*

36 Le agradezco mucho que haya venido a nuestra fiesta. *I thank you very much for having come to our party.*

Remember that agradecer is followed by the subjunctive.

37 Encantada de hacerlo. *Delighted to have done so (do so).*

Encantado requires de before an infinitive.

38 Es una lástima que no nos hayamos conocido antes. *It's a pity that we haven't got to know each other before.*

39 Me hubiera gustado hacerlo. *I would have liked to (do so),*

Here the imperfect subjunctive form hubiera is used in place of the conditional habría.

40 pero queríamos aprovechar todo el tiempo para estar con nuestro hijo. *but we wanted to take advantage of the whole time to be with our son.*

41 Debe ser muy duro para Vds. el separarse de él. *Leaving him must be very hard for you.*

As you can see duro is not restricted in use to merely describing things that are physically hard like los panecillos duros (L23, N9).

42 ¿Volverán para la boda de Teresita y Diego? *Will you come back for the wedding of Teresita and Diego?*

43 Nos encantaría hacerlo, pero tendría que tocarnos la lotería. *We'd love to do so, but we'd have to win the lottery* (lit: *the lottery would have to touch us*).

a Encantar is followed directly by the infinitive, unlike encantado (N37). Note the difference in these two examples:

Me encantaría hacerlo:

Estaría encantado de hacerlo: *I'd be delighted to do so.*

b The lottery referred to is the state-run lottery in which very large prizes can be won.

44 ¡Son tantos gastos! *There are so many expenses!*

45 ¿Dónde te habías metido, Marisol? *Where had you got to, Marisol* (lit: *where had you placed yourself*)?

46 Perdonad. *I'm sorry (I beg your pardon).*

47 Estoy furioso con mi hermana por no habernos presentado antes. *I'm annoyed with my sister for not having introduced us before.*

Por has the meaning of *for, by or through* when used with an infinitive. Para with an infinitive means *in order to* (App. 16).

48 Yo no supe hasta anteayer que Teresa tenía un hermano. *I didn't know until the day before yesterday that Teresa had a brother.*

Supe is the yo form of the preterite of saber (App. 4f).

49 Habría podido llevarte a conocer sitios y lo habríamos pasado muy bien. *I could have taken you to get to know places and we would have enjoyed ourselves very much.*

a The conditional of haber followed by a past participle gives us the Spanish equivalent of *would have done*. It forms, in fact, the conditional perfect tense. When the past participle in question is *podido* the English translation is usually *could have or might have* (App. 7c). Hence *habría podido llevarte: I could have taken you*. Notice the verb coming after *podido* is an infinitive.

b Habríamos pasado is again a conditional perfect. You can, of course, replace the conditional of haber with the ra imperfect subjunctive as happened in *hubiera gustado* (N39). This would give us *hubiera podido llevarte and hubiéramos pasado*.

50 ¿Querrás contestarme? *Will you reply to me?*

Querrás is the tú form of the future tense of querer (App. 4e). Its use here indicates that Pepito is asking Marisol if she will be willing (i.e. want) to answer his letters.

51 Intentaré hacerlo. *I'll try to (do so).*

Intentar is followed directly by an infinitive (App. 10a). Please note that it never means *to intend*, which is pensar or tener (la) intención de.

52 ¿Lo dices en serio? *Are you serious (do you say it seriously)?*

53 estas fiestas de familia no me van nada. *these family parties don't appeal to me at all.*

This use of *ir* with *no...nada* is a very useful idiomatic expression.

54 pues la verdad es que tampoco me entusiasman. *well the truth is that they don't thrill me either.*

tampoco: *neither, not...either* (App. 15a).

55 A ti puede haber algo que te interese. *There might be something that'll interest you.*

Algo que is an indefinite antecedent and so is followed by the subjunctive *interese*.

- 56 ¿De qué se trata? *What's it about?*
 57 De la viuda de Soler. *The widow (of) Soler.*
 a The first **de** in this sentence means *about* and follows **se trata** which is understood but not actually said.
 b Soler is the surname of the lady's dead husband; hence the use of **de** with it.
 c Viuda is often abbreviated to Vda. which should not be mistaken for a feminine form of **Vd.**
 58 Ha tenido los ojos puestos en ti toda la noche. *She's had her eyes fixed on you all night.*
 59 ¿Un matrimonio de conveniencia? *A marriage of convenience?*
 60 De momento me interesa más un copazo de champán. *For the moment a large glass of champagne interests me more.*
 61 ¡Qué idea tan genial! *What a brilliant idea!*

Part three

¿A ver la Alhambra? *To see the Alhambra?*

- 62 ¿Es Vd. colombiano o español? *Are you Colombian or Spanish?*
 63 Soy de origen español. *I'm of Spanish origin.*
 64 Si fuera a España, ¿qué le gustaría visitar? *If you went to Spain, what would you like to visit?*
 Remember that when the main verb of a sentence is in the conditional, the verb following **si** must be in the imperfect subjunctive (L27, N19a).
 65 Iría en primer lugar a Granada. *In the first place I'd go to Granada.*
 66 No cabe duda que la Alhambra es única. *There's no doubt that the Alhambra is unique.*
 No cabe duda: *there's no doubt* is a common and useful alternative to *no hay duda*.
 67 las granadinas son muy guapas. *the girls from Granada are very beautiful*

Sabor artístico *Artistic taste*

- 68 La catedral gótica del siglo XIII. Es una joya. *The 13th. century Gothic cathedral. It's a jewel.*
 el siglo XIII (trece): *the thirteenth century*
 69 El museo de escultura y los helados. *The museum of sculpture and the ice creams.*

Lección treinta Lesson thirty

Regreso a Chile Going back to Chile

What happens

Part one

The Muñoz family are now about to leave Barcelona for Chile and everyone is very sad. The boat is due to sail within the hour and the scene in the harbour as night falls is most impressive.

Part two

Camino del puerto *On the way to the harbour*

Don Felipe, doña María and Diego are going to the harbour with the Muñoz family to see them off. Everyone is ready to leave but they have to wait for Marisol who has slipped out to say good-bye to Pepito.

Luis se despide. *Luis says good-bye.*

Luis goes on board to say good-bye to his family. Doña Julia tells him to write to them more frequently.

Al zarpar *On weighing anchor*

Marisol and her grandmother are both very sad as the ship gets under way. Don Ramón and doña Julia are very pleased with their cabin and have thoroughly enjoyed their holiday.

Part three

El señor Navarro es detenido. *Mr. Navarro is arrested.*

Sr. Navarro is arrested for ignoring three notices to pay a fine. He had not received them as he had moved house three times in the past year. The car he had thought lost has been illegally parked for two years.

New words in this lesson

el aviso warning
 el camarote cabin
 el colegio school
 el crepúsculo dusk
 el cumplido compliment
 el desastre disaster

el guardia civil Civil guard
 el maletín little case
 el "soplón" tell-tale
 el transatlántico liner

la ausencia absence

la cuestión matter, question
 las escaleras gangway
 la ley law
 la licenciatura degree
 la luz light
 la multa fine
 la multitud crowd
 la ofensa offence
 la sensación feeling
 la tristeza sadness

aparcado parked
 desconsolado miserable
 desolado heart-broken
 detenido arrested, under arrest
 huraño sullen
 increíble incredible
 indescribible indescribable
 intranquilo worried
 trigésimo thirtieth

arreglarse to get oneself ready
 bajarse to get off
 cambiarse de casa to move house
 enamorarse to fall in love
 encender(ie) to light, switch on
 encogerse to shrink, skip a beat
 enterrar(ie) to bury
 entristecerse to become sad
 evitar to help, avoid
 hacerse a la mar to put to sea
 infringir to break
 ir yendo to be going, getting along
 llorar to cry
 marearse to get seasick
 mencionar to mention
 mostrarse(ue) to look, seem
 notar to notice, note

Notes

Part one

- 1 Parece imposible que hayan pasado tres meses, y que estemos en el Puerto a punto de partir. *It seems impossible that three months have passed, and that we're in the harbour about to leave.*
 Expressions of impossibility like *parece imposible* que are followed by the subjunctive (App. 9b).

partir to leave
 preguntar to ask
 preguntarse to wonder
 quitar to remove
 seguir(i) to follow
 sentar(ie) bien to do good
 suceder to happen
 tener esperando to keep waiting
 tener intranquilo to make someone worry
 zarpar to weigh anchor

todo el mundo everyone, everybody

a punto de on the point of
 camino de on the way to

con tal que provided that
 desde que since

a lo sumo at the most
 delante in front
 de modo especial especially

¡Buen viaje! Bon voyage!
 cual pez fuera del agua like a fish out of water
 Dios quiera que... God grant that...
 gracias por thank you for
 ¡hala! now then!
 más que nadie more than anyone
 no faltaría más no arguing about it
 por suerte fortunately
 se me encoge el corazón my heart skips a beat
 vaya, vaya come now!

2 Es una sensación de tristeza indescriptible. *It's a feeling of indescribable sadness.*

3 Me pregunto si habrá ocurrido algún desastre en mi ausencia. *I'm wondering if there will have been any disaster in my absence.*

4 Fuera del hospital, estoy cual pez fuera del agua. *Outside the hospital, I'm like a fish out of water.*

a Notice that *estar* is used in this expression.

b *Cual* is sometimes used instead of *como*.

5 A todos nos cuesta dejar a Luis, y de modo especial a Julia, naturalmente. *It's hard for us all to leave Luis, and especially for Julia, of course.*
 de modo especial: especially

6 si termina su licenciatura en económicas. *if he completes his degree in economics.*

La licenciatura is a first degree at a Spanish university taken after a five year course of study.

7 y Marisol, sobre todo, se muestra muy huraña. *and Marisol, in particular, looks very sullen.*

8 pero, ésa es una cuestión que ni siquiera vale la pena mencionar; *but that's a matter that's not even worth mentioning;*

Cuestión is used when the English word *question* has the sense of *matter* or *problem*. It is not an alternative to *pregunta*.

9 debe volver al colegio: lo que le conviene. *she must go back to (the) school: which is what she needs (lit: what suits her),*
 al colegio: to school

10 El Puerto de Barcelona ofrece una vista impresionante; *The Port of Barcelona presents an impressive sight;*

11 es la hora del crepúsculo. *it's (the hour of the) dusk.*

12 Los grandes transatlánticos encienden sus luces, y hay multitud de personas que se despiden. *The great transatlantic liners are switching on their lights, and there's a crowd of people (who are) saying good-bye.*

a encender(ie): to put on, switch on (lights, electrical appliances etc.).

b multitud: crowd Spanish nouns ending in *tud* are feminine.

13 Nuestro barco se hará a la mar dentro de una hora. *Our ship will put to sea within the hour.*

Part two

Camino del puerto *On the way to the harbour*

14 Espero que quepa todo el equipaje en el coche. *I hope that all the luggage will fit in to the car.*

Quepa is the third person singular form of the present subjunctive of *caber*: to fit in, be room for, of which you have already met the future tense in *cabremos* (L19, N46).

- 15 ¿Falta algo más? *Is there anything else left?*
 16 Sólo este maletín. Con un poco de suerte también cabrá. *Only this little case. With a little luck it'll fit too.*
 17 Es increíble que cupiese todo. *It's incredible that there should be room for everything.*
 a Es increíble que: it's incredible that has the same effect as a verb of believing used negatively and so is followed by the subjunctive (L10, N10).
 b Cupiese is the third person singular form of the imperfect subjunctive of *caber* (N14). As you can see it is a very irregular form (App. 4i).
 18 No hay necesidad de que vengáis todos al Puerto. *There's no need for you all to come to the Port.*
 You will remember that expressions of necessity are followed by the subjunctive (App. 9m).
 19 Servirá para que nos entristezcamos más. *It will (serve to) make us get sadder.*
 20 Vamos todos, no faltaría más. *We're all going, no arguing about it.*
 No faltaría más is a very emphatic way of putting an end to a discussion.
 21 Entonces yo creo que podemos ir yendo. *Then I think that we can be going.*
 Notice that here we have *ir* followed by its own gerund *yendo*.
 22 ¿Ya acabó Marisol de arreglarse? *Has Marisol finished getting herself ready yet?*
 23 Me prometió que no tardaría en volver con tal que le guardara el secreto. *She promised me she wouldn't be long (in returning) provided that I kept her secret.*
 Con tal que: provided that is followed by the subjunctive (App. 9n).
 24 Se va a quedar desconsolado. *He's going to be miserable.*
 25 Vaya, vaya, Diego; nunca creí que fueras un "soplón". *Come now, Diego; I never thought you were a "tell-tale".*

Luis se despide. *Luis says good-bye.*

- 26 ¿por qué no te bajas ya? *why don't you get off now?*
 Bajar(se) is used for *to get off, get out* referring to vehicles.
 27 Deben estar a punto de quitar las escaleras. *They must be about to remove the gangway.*
 estar a punto de: *to be about to, on the point of*
 28 No creo que haya mucha prisa. *I don't think there's a great hurry.*
 29 Dios quiera que nos volvamos a ver. *God grant that we'll see each other again.*
 We have two subjunctives here. *Dios quiera que* is a fixed expression using the subjunctive form *quiera* and it, in turn, is followed by a subjunctive (App. 9e).
 30 Nos enterrarás a todos. *You'll bury us all.*

- 31 ¡Hala, guapo, dame un abrazo! ¡Cuidate! *Now then, my handsome, give me a hug! Take care of yourself!*
 Note the accent on *cuidate*.
 32 Siempre nos tienes esperando noticias. *You always keep (have) us waiting for news.*
 Tener is used with *esperando* with the sense of *to keep waiting*.
 33 Si me sucediese algo, lo sabrías en seguida. *If anything happened to me, you would know at once.*
 Remember that if the main verb is in the conditional tense the clause introduced by *si* will have its verb in the imperfect subjunctive (App. 9s).
 34 De todos modos en escribir una carta no se tardan más de diez minutos, a lo sumo. *Anyway, no more than ten minutes at the most are taken up in writing a letter.*
 a Remember más de for *more than* before a number.
 b a lo sumo: *at the most*
 35 Acuérdate, hijo, y no nos tengas intranquilos. *Remember, son, and don't make us worried.*
 36 Todo el mundo se ha despedido ya. *Everyone has already said good-bye.*
 37 ¡Buen viaje! *Bon voyage!*
 Al zarpar *On weighing anchor*
 38 ¿por qué estás llorando? *why are you crying?*
 39 No puedo evitarlo. *I can't help it.*
 Evitar means *to help* in the sense of *to avoid*; it is not an alternative to *ayudar*.
 40 Cada vez que oigo "España Cañi" se me encoge el corazón. *Every time that I hear "España Cañi" my heart skips a beat (lit: my heart shrinks).*
 a Oigo is the *yo* form of the present tense of *oír*: *to hear* (App. 4a).
 b "España Cañi" is the title of a pasodoble which most Spaniards find very nostalgic. Obviously the band is playing it as the ship leaves the harbour.
 41 También yo estoy desolado. *I'm heart-broken too.*
 42 Niña, crees que te has enamorado, ¿verdad? *You think you've fallen in love, my girl, don't you?*
 43 Por suerte para ti, *Fortunately for you,*
 44 ¿Qué te parece el camarote, Julia? *What do you think of the cabin, Julia?*
 45 Con tal que no nos mareemos. *Provided that we don't get seasick.*
 Marearse is nowadays used for all forms of travel sickness. You may recall Marisol saying *estoy un poco mareada* when travelling by air (L19, N25).
 46 También conviene que las tomén mamá y Marisol. *It would also be a good thing for mother and Marisol to take them.*

Remember that *conviene* que is followed by the subjunctive (L17, N51).

- 47 *te han sentado muy bien.* *they've done you a lot of good* (lit: *they've suited you very well*).
sentar bien a alguien: to do someone good
- 48 *Las necesitabas más que nadie.* *You needed them more than anyone.*
Nadie is used after *más que* to mean *anyone* and not *alguien*. Similarly we have *más que nada: more than anything*; *más que nunca: more than ever*. This also applies after *mejor que: better than*; *peor que: worse than*; *menos que: less than*; *antes de: before* and *después de: after* (App. 15e).
- 49 *Pareces más joven desde que te has vuelto un poco más rubia.* *You look younger since you've become a little fairer.*
volverse: to become
- 50 *Ya ves que lo he notado.* *You see that I've noticed.*
- 51 *Gracias por el cumplido.* *Thanks for the compliment.*

Part three

El señor Navarro es detenido. *Mr. Navarro is arrested.*

- 52 **Guardia Civil** *Civil Guard*
 Un guardia civil is a member of la Guardia Civil, a para-military organisation responsible for law enforcement principally in country districts. They are easily recognisable by their three-cornered hats of black patent leather and olive green uniforms.
- 53 *Queda Vd. detenido.* *You're under arrest.*
- 54 *Ha infringido Vd. la ley durante dos años.* *You've been breaking the law for two years.*
- 55 *Se le han enviado tres avisos para que pagara una multa.* *You've been sent three notices to pay a fine.*
- 56 *El caso es que este año me he cambiado de casa tres veces, pero eso no es una ofensa.* *The fact is that this year I've moved house three times, but that's not an offence.*
cambiarse de casa: to move house
- 57 *Pero sí lo es el que su coche haya estado aparcado dos años.* *But the fact that your car has been parked for two years is.*
- a Note how the emphasis is conveyed in the Spanish sentence by *sí lo es* is right at the beginning of the sentence whereas in English we place the verb *is* at the end.
- b *El que: the fact that* is followed by the subjunctive (App. 91).
- 58 *¿Y yo que lo creía perdido!* *And I who thought it lost!*

Translations of the words in Spanish Sounds (sonidos españoles)

i Vowels

1 house; some; dress 2 cheese; cabinet maker 3 record; kidney; he wanted 4 enclosure; he heard; he runs 5 point; to suggest

ii Diphthongs

6 James 7 cause 8 comb 9 relative 10 towards 11 old 12 lip 13 widowhood 14 beret 15 net casting 16 mare 17 new 18 to take care 19 assiduous

iii Triphthongs

20 you despise 21 you appreciate 22 you inquire 23 you pacify 24 mew 25 bow-wow

iv Consonants

26 sherry glass; small 27 late; to tie 28 head; cross; to want; perhaps; when; tale 29 battle; bee; truth; sheep 30 finger; Adela 31 some; grace; shame; penguin; war; guitar 32 favour; coffee 33 zeal; cinema; musical play; shoe 34 rose; to be used to 35 I; laws 36 caught; to catch; Jesus; ham; to play 37 boy; chocolate 38 bed; table 39 nothing; never 40 child; morning 41 side; end 42 key; chicken 43 dear; but 44 cart; dog; red; Henry; around 45 examination; to exact 46 to do; horrible

v Do not confuse

47 dog; but 48 there is; he finds 49 glove; war 50 guide; weather-cock 51 but; hair 52 soul; weapon 53 way; porter

vi Stress

54 I spend; he spent 55 come in; I went 56 towards; it made 57 law; I read 58 habit; I live; he lived 59 elephant; telephone 60 right; Córdoba 61 truth; easy 62 they receive; Catalan 63 garages; twenty-two

vii A note on the alphabet

Note that the following are considered to be separate letters in Spanish; *ch, ll, ñ, rr*. You should try to keep this in mind when consulting vocabulary lists and dictionaries.

Appendices

1	Regular verbs	216
2	Radical Changing verbs	221
3	Verbs ending in <i>iar</i> and <i>uar</i>	222
4	Irregular verbs	223
5	Verbs with spelling changes	229
6	Reflexive verbs	232
7	Notes on the use of tenses	233
8	Hay etc.	235
9	The Subjunctive	235
10	Government of verbs	239
11	Ser and Estar	240
12	The Articles	241
13	Adjectives	242
14	Pronouns	245
15	Negatives	249
16	Para and Por	250
17	Numbers	251
18	Accents	252
19	Stress	253
20	Time	254
21	Spanish Christian Names	255
22	Family Tree	256

1 REGULAR VERBS

(a) Present Tense

AR verbs e.g. esperar		ER verbs e.g. comer		IR verbs e.g. vivir	
yo	espero	como		vivo	
tú	esperas	comes		vives	
él, ella usted	espera	come		vive	
nosotros	esperamos	comemos		vivimos	
vosotros	esperáis	coméis		vivís	
ellos, ellas ustedes	esperan	comen		viven	

(b) The Imperative

	AR verbs	ER verbs	IR verbs
(Tú)	espera	come	vive
(Vosotros)	esperad	comed	vivid
(Usted)	espere	coma	viva
(Ustedes)	esperen	coman	vivan
(nosotros)	esperemos	comamos	vivamos

The usted, ustedes and nosotros forms are part of the Present Subjunctive (App. 11) as are all negative imperatives (App. 9d).

(c) Present Continuous Tense

This is formed by the present tense of *estar* (sometimes *ir*) and the gerund.

AR verbs	ER verbs	IR verbs
estoy esperando	estoy comiendo	estoy viviendo
estás esperando	estás comiendo	estás viviendo
está esperando	está comiendo	está viviendo
estamos esperando	estamos comiendo	estamos viviendo
estáis esperando	estáis comiendo	estáis viviendo
están esperando	están comiendo	están viviendo

You will notice that the gerund does not change. To form the gerund you replace *ar* by *ando* e.g. *deseando*, *esperando* and *er* or *ir* by *iendo* e.g. *comiendo* and *viviendo*.

(d) Perfect Tense

This is formed by the present tense of *haber* and the past participle.

AR verbs	ER verbs	IR verbs
he esperado	he comido	he vivido
has esperado	has comido	has vivido
ha esperado	ha comido	ha vivido
hemos esperado	hemos comido	hemos vivido
habéis esperado	habéis comido	habéis vivido
han esperado	han comido	han vivido

The past participle does not change. To form the past participle you replace *ar* by *ado* e.g. *deseado* and *er* or *ir* by *ido* e.g. *comido*, *vivido*.

(e) Future Tense

To form the future you add the endings *é, ás, á, emos, éis, án* to the infinitive of the verb.

AR verbs	ER verbs	IR verbs
esperaré	comeré	viviré
esperarás	comerás	vivirás
esperará	comerá	vivirá
esperaremos	comeremos	viviremos
esperaréis	comeréis	viviréis
esperarán	comerán	vivirán

(f) Conditional Tense

To form the conditional tense you replace the endings of the future tense with *ía, ías, ía, íamos, íais, ían*.

AR verbs	ER verbs	IR verbs
esperaría	comería	viviría
esperarías	comerías	vivirías
esperaría	comería	viviría
esperaríamos	comeríamos	viviríamos
esperaríais	comeríais	viviríais
esperarían	comerían	vivirían

(g) **Preterite Tense**

To form the preterite tense you remove the ending of the infinitive and add the following; for ar verbs é, aste, ó, amos, asteis, aron and for er or ir verbs í, iste, ió, imos, isteis, ieron.

AR verbs	ER verbs	IR verbs
esperé	comí	viví
esperaste	comiste	viviste
esperó	comió	vivió
esperamos	comimos	vivimos
esperasteis	comisteis	vivisteis
esperaron	comieron	vivieron

(h) **Imperfect Tense**

To form the imperfect tense you remove the ending of the infinitive and add the following; for ar verbs aba, abas, aba, ábamos, abais, aban and for er or ir verbs ía, ías, ía, íamos, íais, ían.

AR verbs	ER verbs	IR verbs
esperaba	comía	vivía
esperabas	comías	vivías
esperaba	comía	vivía
esperábamos	comíamos	vivíamos
esperabais	comíais	vivíais
esperaban	comían	vivían

(i) **Pluperfect Tense**

This is formed by the imperfect tense of haber and the past participle

AR verbs	ER/IR verbs
había esperado	había comido
habías esperado	habías comido
había esperado	había comido
habíamos esperado	habíamos comido
habíais esperado	habíais comido
habían esperado	habían comido

(j) **The Future Perfect Tense**

This is formed by the future tense of haber and the past participle.

AR verbs	ER/IR verbs
habré esperado	habré vivido
habrás esperado	habrás vivido
habrá esperado	habrá vivido
habremos esperado	habremos vivido
habréis esperado	habréis vivido
habrán esperado	habrán vivido

(k) **The Conditional Perfect Tense**

This is formed by the conditional tense of haber and the past participle.

AR verbs	ER/IR verbs
habría esperado	habría comido
habrías esperado	habrías comido
habría esperado	habría comido
habríamos esperado	habríamos comido
habríais esperado	habríais comido
habrían esperado	habrían comido

N.B. This tense may also be formed by the imperfect subjunctive of haber (App. 9t) and the past participle.

(l) **The Present Subjunctive Tense**

This tense is formed by taking the yo form of the Present Indicative tense (App. 1a), removing the o ending and replacing it as follows; for ar verbs add e, es, e, emos, éis, en and for er and ir verbs add a, as, a, amos, áis, an.

AR verbs	ER verbs	IR verbs
espere	coma	viva
esperes	comas	vivas
espere	coma	viva
esperemos	comamos	vivamos
esperéis	comáis	viváis
esperen	coman	vivan

(m) The Imperfect Subjunctive Tense

This tense has two forms. One we may call the *ra* form and the other the *se* form. Both are formed by removing the ending *ron* from the third person plural form of the Preterite and adding the following endings (i) *ra*, *ras*, *ra*, *ramos*, *rais*, *ran* or (ii) *se*, *ses*, *se*, *semos*, *seis*, *sen*. Note the accent on the *nosotros* form.

AR verbs			ER verbs		
esperara	or	esperase	comiera	or	comiese
esperaras	or	esperases	comieras	or	comieses
esperara	or	esperase	comiera	or	comiese
esperáramos	or	esperásemos	comiéramos	or	comiésemos
esperarais	or	esperaseis	comierais	or	comieseis
esperaran	or	esperasen	comieran	or	comiesen

IR verbs		
viviera	or	viviese
vivieras	or	vivieses
viviera	or	viviese
viviéramos	or	viviésemos
vivierais	or	vivieseis
vivieran	or	viviesen

(n) Other Subjunctive Tenses

The perfect and pluperfect subjunctives are formed with the past participle and the present or imperfect subjunctive of *haber*.

Perfect Subjunctive	Pluperfect Subjunctive
haya esperado	hubiera/hubiese comido
hayas esperado	hubieras/hubieses comido
haya esperado	hubiera/hubiese comido
hayamos esperado	hubiéramos/hubiésemos comido
hayáis esperado	hubierais/hubieseis comido
hayan esperado	hubieran/hubiesen comido

2 RADICAL CHANGING VERBS

These are verbs in which the root vowel of the infinitive changes when it bears the stress. They are of the three kinds; *o* to *ue*, *e* to *ie* and *e* to *i*. This change takes place in the present indicative and present subjunctive on all except the *nosotros* and *vosotros* forms.

(a) *o* to *ue*

Present Indicative		Present Subjunctive	
poder(ue)	encontrar(ue)	poder(ue)	encontrar(ue)
puedo	encuentro	pueda	encuentre
puedes	encuentras	puedas	encuentres
puede	encuentra	pueda	encuentre
podemos	encontramos	podamos	encontremos
podéis	encontráis	podáis	encontréis
pueden	encuentran	puedan	encuentren

Jugar changes *u* to *ue* as shown above. Oler changes *o* to *hue* e.g. huelo, hueles etc.

(b) *e* to *ie*

Present Indicative		Present Subjunctive	
querer(ie)	empezar(ie)	querer(ie)	empezar(ie)
quiero	empiezo	quiera	empiece
quieres	empezas	quieras	empieces
quiere	empieza	quiera	empiece
queremos	empezamos	queramos	empecemos
queréis	empezáis	queráis	empecéis
quieren	empezan	quieran	empiecen

Ir verbs which change *e* to *ie* also make a change from *e* to *i* in the third person forms of the preterite, e.g. hervir: hirvió, hirvieron; mentir: mintió, mintieron.

(c) e to i

This is the smallest of the three groups of radical changing verbs. The verbs concerned are all *it* verbs and the radical change also takes place in the *gerund* and the *nosotros* and *vosotros* forms of the present subjunctive.

Present Indicative

servir(i)	pedir(i)
sirvo	vido
sirves	pides
sirve	pide
servimos	pedimos
servís	pedís
sirven	piden

Present Subjunctive

servir(i)	pedir(i)
sirva	pida
sirvas	pidas
sirva	pida
servamos	pidamos
serváis	pidáis
sirvan	pidan

Gerund: sirviendo, pidiendo

These verbs also make the change in the third person forms of the preterite. Hence we have.

servir: sirvió; sirvieron
seguir: siguió; siguieron
sonreír: sonrió; sonrieron

pedir: pidió; pidieron
repetir: repitió; repitieron

3 VERBS ENDING IN IAR AND UAR

These verbs bear a written accent on forms where the stress falls on the *i* or the *u* respectively. This occurs in the present indicative and present subjunctive.

Enviar

Continuar

Present Indicative Present Subjunctive Present Indicative Present Subjunctive

envío	envie	continúo	continúe
envías	envíes	continúas	continúes
envía	envíe	continúa	continúe
enviamos	enviemos	continuamos	continuemos
enviáis	enviéis	continuáis	continúéis
envían	envíen	continúan	continúen

4 IRREGULAR VERBS

(a) Present Tense

Caber	Caer	Dar	Decir
quepo	caigo	doy	digo
cabes	caes	das	dices
cabe	cae	da	dice
cabemos	caemos	damos	decimos
cabéis	caéis	dáis	decís
caben	caen	dan	dicen

Estar	Haber	Hacer	Ir
estoy	he	hago	voy
estás	has	haces	vas
está	ha	hace	va
estamos	hemos	hacemos	vamos
estáis	habéis	hacéis	vais
están	han	hacen	van

Oír	Poner	Saber	Salir	Ser
oigo	pongo	sé	salgo	soy
oyes	pones	sabes	sales	eres
oye	pone	sabe	sale	es
oímos	ponemos	sabemos	salimos	somos
oís	ponéis	sabéis	salís	sois
oyen	ponen	saben	salen	son

Tener	Traer	Valer	Venir	Ver
tengo	traigo	valgo	vengo	veo
tienes	traes	vales	vienes	ves
tiene	trae	vale	viene	ve
tenemos	traemos	valemos	venimos	vemos
tenéis	traéis	valéis	venís	veis
tienen	traen	valen	vienen	ven

Notes

- (i) *Compounds of decir like bendecir; to bless, maldecir; to curse, follow the pattern outlined for decir in all tenses, except future, conditional and past participle.*
- (ii) *Compounds of poner, like disponer and suponer, follow the pattern outlined for poner in all tenses.*
- (iii) *Compounds of tener, like contener, detener, mantenerse follow the pattern outlined for tener in all tenses.*
- (iv) *Compounds of traer, like extraer, follow the pattern outlined for traer in all tenses.*
- (v) *Compounds of venir, like convenir, follow the pattern outlined for venir in all tenses.*

(b) Imperatives

The following verbs have an irregular tú imperative form:

decir: di hacer: haz ir: ve poner: pon
salir: sal ser: sé tener: ten venir: ven

The Imperatives forms for vosotros, usted, ustedes and nosotros follow the normal pattern (App. 1b), as do the negative imperatives (App. 9d).

(c) Gerunds

The following verbs have an irregular gerund:

caer: cayendo creer: creyendo decir: diciendo
dormir: durmiendo ir: yendo leer: leyendo
morir: muriendo oír: oyendo poder: pudiendo
traer: trayendo venir: viniendo

(d) Past Participles

The following verbs have an irregular past participle:

decir: dicho escribir: escrito hacer: hecho
morir: muerto poner: puesto romper: roto
ver: visto volver: vuelto

(e) Future and Conditional Tenses

Irregular futures and conditionals have the same endings as regular verbs (App. 1e, f) but their endings are not added to the infinitive.

Caber		Decir	
Future	Conditional	Future	Conditional
cabré	cabría	diré	diría
cabrás	cabrías	dirás	dirías
cabrá	cabría	dirá	diría
cabremos	cabríamos	diremos	diríamos
cabréis	cabríais	diréis	diríais
cabrán	cabrían	dirán	dirían

Haberm

Future	Conditional
habré	habría
habrás	habrías
habrá	habría
habremos	habríamos
habréis	habríais
habrán	habrían

Hacer

Future	Conditional
haré	haría
harás	harías
hará	haría
haremos	haríamos
haréis	haríais
harán	harían

Poder

Future	Conditional
podré	podría
podrás	podrías
podrá	podría
podremos	podríamos
podréis	podríais
podrán	podrían

Poner

Future	Conditional
pondré	pondría
pondrás	pondrías
pondrá	pondría
pondremos	pondríamos
pondréis	pondríais
pondrán	pondrían

Querer

Future	Conditional
querré	querría
querrás	querrias
querrá	querria
querremos	querriamos
querréis	querriais
querrán	querrian

Saber

Future	Conditional
sabré	sabría
sabrás	sabrías
sabrás	sabría
sabremos	sabríamos
sabréis	sabríais
sabrán	sabrían

Salir

Future	Conditional
saldré	saldría
saldrás	saldrías
saldrá	saldría
salaremos	saldríamos
saldréis	saldríais
saldrán	saldrían

Tener

Future	Conditional
tendré	tendría
tendrás	tendrías
tendrá	tendría
tendremos	tendríamos
tendréis	tendríais
tendrán	tendrían

Valer		Venir	
Future	Conditional	Future	Conditional
valdré	valdría	vendré	vendría
valdrás	valdrías	vendrás	vendrían
valdrá	valdría	vendrá	vendría
valdremos	valdríamos	vendremos	vendríamos
valdréis	valdríais	vendréis	vendríais
valdrán	valdrían	vendrán	vendrían

(f) **Preterite Tense**

(i) **Pretéritos Graves**

These are preterites which, apart from any other irregularities they may have, do not have an accent on the first and third person singular forms.

Andar	Caber	Conducir	Dar	Decir
anduve	cupe	conduje	di	dije
anduviste	cupiste	condujiste	diste	dijiste
anduvo	cupo	condujo	dio	dijo
anduvimos	cupimos	condujimos	dimos	dijimos
anduvisteis	cupisteis	condujisteis	disteis	dijisteis
anduvieron	cupieron	condujeron	dieron	dijeron

Estar	Haber	Hacer	Introducir	Ir
estuve	hube	hice	introduje	fui
estuviste	hubiste	hiciste	introdujiste	fuiste
estuvo	hubo	hizo	introdujo	fue
estuvimos	hubimos	hicimos	introdujimos	fuimos
estuvisteis	hubisteis	hicisteis	introdujisteis	fuisteis
estuvieron	hubieron	hicieron	introdujeron	fueron

Poder	Poner	Querer	Saber
pude	puse	quise	supe
pudiste	pusiste	quisiste	supiste
pudo	puso	quiso	supo
pudimos	pusimos	quisimos	supimos
pudisteis	pusisteis	quisisteis	supisteis
pudieron	pusieron	quisieron	supieron

Ser	Tener	Traer	Venir	Ver
fui	tuve	traje	vine	vi
fuiste	tuviste	trajiste	viniste	viste
fue	tuvo	trajo	vino	vio
fuimos	tuvimos	trajimos	vinimos	vimos
fuisteis	tuvisteis	trajisteis	vinisteis	visteis
fueron	tuvieron	trajeron	vinieron	vieron

(ii) **Caer, creer, leer, oír**

These four verbs have y in the third person forms instead of i.

Caer	Creer	Leer	Oír
caí	creí	leí	oí
caíste	creíste	leíste	oíste
cayó	creyó	leyó	oyó
caímos	creímos	leímos	oímos
caísteis	creísteis	leísteis	oísteis
cayeron	creyeron	leyeron	oyeron

See also concluir (App. 5h).

(iii) **Dormir and morir**

Dormir	Morir
dormí	morí
dormiste	moriste
durmió	murió
dormimos	morimos
dormisteis	moristeis
durmieron	murieron

(g) **Imperfect Tense**

Ir	Ser	Ver
iba	era	veía
ibas	eras	veías
iba	era	veía
íbamos	éramos	veíamos
ibais	erais	veíais
iban	eran	veían

(h) **Present Subjunctive**

The rule given in App. 11 concerning the formation of the Present Subjunctive applies to irregular verbs except those where the yo form of the Present Indicative does not end in o.

Dar	Estar	Haber
dé	esté	haya
des	estés	hayas
dé	esté	haya
demos	estemos	hayamos
deis	estéis	hayáis
den	estén	hayan

Ir	Saber	Ser
vaya	sepa	sea
vayas	sepas	seas
vaya	sepa	sea
vayamos	sepamos	seamos
vayáis	sepáis	seáis
vayan	sepan	sean

(i) **Imperfect Subjunctives**

The rule given in App. 1m for the formation of the two forms of the Imperfect Subjunctive applies to all verbs however irregular they might be. Three examples are given here.

Decir	Ir/Ser	Tener
dijera/dijese	fuera/fuese	tuviera/tuviese
dijeras/dijeses	fueras/fueses	tuvieras/tuvieses
dijera/dijese	fuera/fuese	tuviera/tuviese
dijéramos/dijésemos	fuéramos/fuésemos	tuviéramos/tuviésemos
dijerais/dijeseis	fuerais/fueseis	tuvierais/tuvieseis
dijeran/dijesen	fuieran/fuesen	tuvieran/tuviesen

5**VERBS WITH SPELLING CHANGES**

In order to coincide with the sound of the spoken word some verbs make spelling changes in certain forms.

(a) *Verbs ending in car change c to qu when followed by e, e.g. buscar.*

Preterite	Present Subjunctive	Imperative
busqué	busque	(usted) busque
buscaste	busques	(ustedes) busquen
buscó	busque	
buscamos	busquemos	
buscasteis	busquéis	
buscaron	busquen	

(b) *Verbs ending in gar insert u between g and e, e.g. llegar.*

Preterite	Present Subjunctive	Imperative
llegué	llegue	(usted) llegue
llegaste	llegues	(ustedes) lleguen
llegó	llegue	
llegamos	lleguemos	
llegasteis	lleguéis	
llegaron	lleguen	

(c) *Verbs ending in zar change z to c before e, e.g. empezar.*

Preterite	Present Subjunctive	Imperative
empecé	empiece	(usted) empiece
empezaste	empieces	(ustedes) empiecen
empezó	empiece	
empezamos	empecemos	
empezasteis	empecéis	
empezaron	empiecen	

- (d) *Verbs ending in cer either change the c to zc before a and o e.g. conocer, or change the c to z, e.g. torcer.*

(i) **Conocer**

Present Tense	Present Subjunctive	Imperative
conozco	conozca	(usted) conozca
conoces	conozcas	(ustedes) conozcan
conoce	conozca	
conocemos	conozcamos	
conocéis	conozcáis	
conocen	conozcan	

This pattern is followed by agradecer, apetecer, enristecer, ofrecer, parecer and pertenecer.

(ii) **Torcer**

Present Tense	Present Subjunctive	Imperative
tuerzo	tuerza	(usted) tuerza
tuerces	tuerzas	(ustedes) tuerzan
tuerce	tuerza	
torcemos	torzamos	
torcéis	torzáis	
tuercen	tuerzan	

Convencer follows this pattern.

- (e) *Verbs ending in cir change c to zc before a and o, e.g. conducir.*

Present Tense	Present Subjunctive	Imperative
conduzco	conduzca	(usted) conduzca
conduces	conduzcas	(ustedes) conduzcan
conduce	conduzca	
conducimos	conduzcamos	
conducís	conduzcáis	
conducen	conduzcan	

Introducir follows this pattern. Both these verbs have irregular preterites (App. 4f(i)).

- (f) *Verbs ending in gir change g to j before a and o, e.g. fingir.*

Present Tense	Present Subjunctive	Imperative
fingo	finja	(usted) finja
finges	finjas	(ustedes) finjan
finge	finja	
fingimos	finjamos	
fingís	finjáis	
fingen	finjan	

- (g) *Verbs ending in guir drop u before a and o, e.g. distinguir.*

Present Tense	Present Subjunctive	Imperative
distingo	distinga	(usted) distinga
distingues	distingas	(ustedes) distingan
distingue	distinga	
distinguimos	distingamos	
distinguis	distingáis	
distinguen	distingan	

- (h) *Verbs ending uir, e.g. concluir.*

Present Tense	Present Subjunctive	Preterite Tense
concluyo	concluya	concluí
concluyes	concluyas	concluiste
concluye	concluya	concluyó
concluimos	concluyamos	concluimos
concluís	concluyáis	concluisteis
concluyen	concluyan	concluyeron

Imperatives: (usted) concluya (ustedes) concluyan (tú) concluye
Gerund: concluyendo

- (a) These verbs may be regular or irregular, *ar*, *er* or *ir*. All they have in common is the reflexive pronoun which changes according to the part of the verb being used, e.g. *levantarse*.

Present Tense			Future Tense		Perfect Tense	
(yo)	me	levanto	me	levantaré	me	he levantado
(tú)	te	levantas	te	levantarás	te	has levantado
(él, ella, usted)	se	levanta	se	levantará	se	ha levantado
(nosotros)	nos	levantamos	nos	levantaremos	nos	hemos levantado
(vosotros)	os	levantáis	os	levantaréis	os	habéis levantado
(ellos, ellas, ustedes)	se	levantan	se	levantarán	se	han levantado

As you can see from the above tables the reflexive pronoun comes before the verb and after the subject pronoun, if one is used. With compound tenses such as the perfect the reflexive pronoun comes before *haber*.

- (b) *Gerund*: *levantándose*
 The reflexive pronoun is placed on the end of the gerund and causes an accent to be written on the vowel bearing the stress. The pronoun will change to indicate the person carrying out the action of the verb, e.g. *Estoy levantándome*; *Están levantándose*.
 When the gerund follows another verb the reflexive pronoun may come before the first verb, e.g. *Me estoy levantando*; *Se están levantando*.
 Used with the gerund of *haber* and the past participle the reflexive pronoun is placed on the gerund e.g. *habiéndome levantado*.
- (c) *Infinitive*: *levantarse*
 As with the gerund the reflexive pronoun is placed on the end of the infinitive and changes to denote the person carrying out the action, e.g. *Voy a levantarme*; *Vamos a levantarnos*. Notice that no accent is required on the infinitive.
 When the infinitive depends on a previous verb the reflexive pronoun may precede the first verb, e.g. *Me voy a levantar*; *Nos vamos a levantar*.
 Used with the infinitive of *haber* and a past participle the reflexive pronoun is placed at the end of the infinitive, e.g. *haberme levantado*.

(d)

Imperative

(tú)	levántate	; no te levantes
(usted)	levántese	; no se levante
(nosotros)	levantémonos	; no nos levantemos
(vosotros)	levantaos	; no os levantéis
(ustedes)	levántense	; no se levanten

The reflexive pronoun is attached to the end of a positive command but in a negative command comes between *no* and the verb.

Notice that an accent is required on the vowel bearing the stress in the *tú*, *usted*, *nosotros* and *ustedes* positive command forms.

When *nos* and *os* are added to *levantemos* and *levantad*, the *s* and *d* respectively are dropped giving us *levantémonos* and *levantaos*. With *er* and *ir* verbs this would give us *bebámonos* and *bebeos*; *divirtámonos* and *divertíos* (note the accent).

7

NOTES ON THE USE OF TENSES

(a)

Present Tense

The present tense is used in preference to the perfect to indicate a state of affairs that has begun in the past and is still continuing at the moment of speaking.

Hace veinte años que vive con nosotros. *She's been living with us for twenty years.*

Hace dos días que estoy en Madrid. *I've been in Madrid (for) two days.*
 Espero a Juan desde (hace) una hora. *I've been waiting for Juan (for) an hour.*

Llevamos más de dos meses en España. *We've been in Spain more than two months.*

(b)

Conditional Tense

- (i) The conditional of *deber* is used to mean "ought", "should".
 e.g. *Debería ir en seguida.* *He ought to go at once.*
Deberíamos esperar un poco más. *We should wait a little longer.*
- (ii) The conditional of *poder*, as well as meaning "should/would be able", is also used with the sense of "might, could".
 e.g. *¿Podría pasar un momento?* *Might I come in for a moment?*
¿Podríamos recoger las llaves? *Could we collect the keys?*

(c)

Conditional Perfect Tense

- (i) The conditional perfect of *deber* is used to mean "should have", "ought to have".
 e.g. *Habría debido venir.* *He ought to have come.*
Hubieran debido comprarlo. *They ought to have bought it.*

- (ii) *The conditional perfect of poder is used to mean "could have", "might have".*
 e.g. Habría podido llevarte. I could have taken you.
 Hubiéramos podido ir en coche. We might have gone by car.

(d) **Preterite Tense**

This is used to denote single actions begun and completed in the past, no matter how long they may have lasted.

- e.g. Me compraron un traje. They bought me a dress.
 Estuve en España el año pasado. I was in Spain last year.
 Fueron a esperarnos. They came to meet us.

(e) **Imperfect Tense**

- (i) *This differs greatly from the Preterite in that it refers to continuous and repeated actions in the past. It is often to be translated into English as "was/were doing", "used to do", "would do" (when "would" means "used to").*

- e.g. Iba a España todos los años. I went (used to go) to Spain every year.
 El médico venía a verme los domingos. The doctor would (used to) come and see me on Sundays.
 Llovía cuando ocurrió el accidente. It was raining when the accident happened.
 Estaba durmiendo cuando llegaron. I was sleeping when they arrived.

- (ii) *It is also used with hacía que in preference to the Pluperfect.*
 e.g. Hacía años que no veía a Felisa. I hadn't seen Felisa for years.

(f) **Gerund**

- (i) *This is used with estar or ir to form continuous tenses (App. 1c).*
 (ii) *Used with other verbs the gerund should refer to the same subject as the verb it depends on.*

- e.g. Acabamos organizando un guateque. We ended up by organising a party.
 Pasé el día tomando el sol. I spent the day sunbathing.
 Continuaron comiendo. They continued eating.

N.B. The gerund must never be used after a preposition in Spanish.

- (iii) *The gerund may be used with verbs of motion in circumstances where in English we use adverbs such as "in", "up", "out", "through" etc.*
 e.g. Me voy corriendo. I must fly (lit: I'm going running).
 Salió corriendo. He ran out.
 Subieron corriendo. They ran up.
 Volví andando. I walked back.

(g) **Past participle**

- (i) *As well as being used to form the perfect tenses (App. 1d, i, j, k), the past participle can be used as an adjective, in which case it agrees with the noun it describes.*

- e.g. Tengo la pierna rota. I have a broken leg.
 Marisol está cansada. Marisol is tired.

- (ii) *The past participle is also used to describe states where in English we would use the gerund.*

- e.g. Están sentados en el comedor. They're sitting in the dining room.
 Pasamos el día acostados. We spent the day lying down.

- (iii) *Whenever the past participle is used with a verb other than haber it must agree with the subject of the verb as shown in (ii).*

- e.g. Quedó detenida. She was arrested.

(h) **Infinitive**

- (i) *This is used after a preposition where in English we would use a gerund.*

- e.g. Empecé por ir a misa. I began by going to Mass.
 Piensan en ir a Madrid. They're thinking about going to Madrid.

- Al salir del teatro... On coming out of the theatre...

- (ii) *The infinitive can be used as a verbal noun, in which case el is normally placed before it.*

- e.g. El andar tanto... Walking so much...
 Odio el estar inactiva. I hate being idle.
 Nos cuesta el dejar España. Leaving Spain is hard for us.

8 HAY

hay	there is/are	había	there was/were
habrá	there will be	hubo	there was/were
habría	there would be	ha habido	there has/have been
habrá habido	there will have been	había habido	there had been
habría/hubiera	there would have been		

9 THE SUBJUNCTIVE

The Subjunctive basically conveys a sense of doubt or uncertainty about what is happening or going to happen. It is used in the following circumstances:

- (a) **After expressions of emotion**
 Espero que vengas por la mañana. *I hope you'll come in the morning.*
 Temo que sea aburrido. *I'm afraid it'll be boring.*
 Me alegro de que haya ducha. *I'm glad there's a shower.*
 ¡Ojalá hubiera estudiado! *If only I had studied!*
Other verbs of emotion used with the subjunctive include gustar, agradecer, tener esperanzas de que, es (una) lástima que and comprender in the sense of "to not be surprised".

- (b) **After expressions of doubt or uncertainty**
 Es posible que vaya a Sevilla. *It's possible that I'll go to Seville.*
 Dudo que haya billete para el tren. *I doubt if there are tickets for the train.*
 Quizás vaya en avión. *Perhaps I'll go by air.*
Also after es probable que, probablemente, no estar seguro, no es probable que, parece imposible que.

- (c) **After certain verbs used negatively**
 No creo que dure una hora. *I don't think it'll take an hour.*
 No sabía que pensaras venir. *I didn't know you intended to come.*
Also after no es que, no imaginarse and no ser mala idea que.

- (d) **To form commands**
The present subjunctive is used to form usted, ustedes and nosotros command forms, positive and negative, and the negative tú and vosotros commands (App. 1b).
- | | | | | |
|------------|-----------|--------------|------------|-------------|
| (usted) | espere | no espere | (tú) | no esperes |
| (ustedes) | esperen | no esperen | (vosotros) | no esperéis |
| (nosotros) | esperemos | no esperemos | | |

- (e) **After verbs of wanting**
 Quiero que mis nietos vengan conmigo. *I want my grandchildren to come with me.*
 ¿Prefieres que vayamos en el metro? *Do you prefer us to go in the underground?*

- (f) **After negative or indefinite antecedents**
 Van a dejarlo en una barrera donde haya alguna bella señorita. *They're going to leave it on a barrier where there's some beautiful young lady.*

- Lo que tú prefieras. *Whatever you prefer.*
 No hay nada que puedas hacer. *There's nothing you can do.*

- (g) **After conjunctions of time when future time is implied**
 ¿Dónde dormirá Luis cuando venga? *Where will Luis sleep when he comes?*
 Continúe andando hasta que llegue al banco. *Continue walking until you reach the bank.*
 Telefonéame en cuanto llegues. *Telephone me as soon as you arrive.*
 Me voy corriendo antes de que me eche a llorar. *I must fly before I burst into tears.*

- (h) **After verbs of allowing**
 Déjame que te lo explique. *Let me explain it to you.*

- (i) **After verbs of asking, inviting, advising**
 Me invitaron a que pasara unos días con ellos. *They invited me to spend a few days with them.*
 Sugiero que se pase por mi oficina. *I suggest you come along to my office.*

- (j) **After verbs of implying**
 Implica que me traslade a Barcelona. *It requires me to move to Barcelona.*

- (k) **In certain fixed expressions**
 Como quieras. *As you like.*
 Dios quiera que. *God grant that*

- (l) **After certain impersonal expressions**
 Es mejor que vaya a la droguería. *It's better for you to go to the drugstore.*
 Lo que importa es que hayáis llegado. *What matters is that you have arrived.*
 El que su coche haya estado aparcado dos años. *The fact that your car has been parked for two years.*
Also after (lo) mejor será and la culpa de que.

- (m) **After expressions of necessity**
 Conviene que vuelva mañana. *It's necessary for you to come back tomorrow.*
 No hay necesidad de que vengáis todos. *There's no need for you all to come.*

- (n) **After conjunctions of condition**
 Ven conmigo a menos que tengas algo que hacer.
 Acepto con la condición de que no te sorprendas...
 ...no tardaría con tal que le guardara el secreto.
- Come with me unless you have something to do.
 I accept on condition you're not surprised...
 ...she wouldn't be long provided I kept her secret.*
- (o) **After para que**
 Vuelva mañana para que le examine.
- Come back tomorrow for me to examine you.*
- (p) **After aunque meaning 'even if', 'even though'**
 Aunque sea triste admitirlo...
 Aunque fuese rico no iría.
- Even though it be sad to admit it...
 Even if he were rich he wouldn't go.*
- (q) **After que meaning 'may'**
 Que le vaya todo bien.
 Que Marisol te perdone.
- May everything go well for you.
 May Marisol forgive you.*
- (r) **The Imperfect Subjunctive is used following a clause in which the main verb is in the conditional.**
 Sería interesante que salieran bien.
 ¿Te gustaría que fuéramos a la playa?
 Hubiera querido que nos quedásemos.
- It would be interesting if they came out well.
 Would you like us to go to the beach?
 She would have liked us to stay.*
- (s) **After si in unfulfilled conditions**
 Si me sucediese algo, lo sabría.
 Si fuera rico, no trabajaría.
 The subjunctive used in these clauses is always the imperfect subjunctive. In each case the statement is contrary to fact. In the first one nothing has happened to the speaker and in the second he is not rich.
- If anything happened to me you would know about it.
 If I were rich, I wouldn't work.*
- Notice the difference in these three sentences:*
 Si tengo bastante dinero, iremos al cine.
 Si tenía bastante dinero, íbamos al cine.
- If I have enough money, we'll go to the cinema.
 If I had enough money, we used to go to the cinema.*

Si tuviese bastante dinero, íbamos al cine.
If I had enough money, we would go to the cinema.

- (i) **The ra form of the Imperfect Subjunctive replacing the conditional tense**

This is an optional use of the subjunctive.

Quisiera salir de pesca.
 Me hubiera gustado hacerlo.

*I'd like to go off fishing.
 I would have liked to do so.*

10

GOVERNMENT OF VERBS

- (a) *The following verbs are followed directly by an infinitive;*
- | | | |
|------------------|-------------------|--------------------|
| (me) agrada | intentar | pensar (to intend) |
| apetecer | interesar | permitir |
| conseguir | lograr | poder |
| deber | mandar (to order) | preferir |
| decidir | necesitar | prometer |
| dejar (to allow) | ocurrirse | recordar |
| desear | odiar | querer |
| encantar | ofrecer | saber |
| esperar | oir | sentir |
| (me) gusta/n | olvidar | soler |
| hacer | parecer | ver |
| importar | | |
- (b) *The following verbs require a before a following infinitive;*
- (i) *verbs of motion such as ir, venir, salir, pasar, volver etc.*
- (ii)
- | | |
|-----------|--------------------|
| aprender | echarse |
| ayudar | empezar |
| comenzar | estar acostumbrado |
| continuar | negarse |
| dedicarse | |
- (c) *The following verbs require de before a following infinitive;*
- | | | |
|-----------------------|-----------------|-------------------|
| acabar | estar encantado | tener gusto |
| acordarse | olvidarse | tener oportunidad |
| alegrarse | ser artable | tener tiempo |
| dejar (to fail, omit) | tener deseo | terminar |

- (d) *The following verbs require en before a following infinitive;*
- | | |
|-------------|-------------------------|
| complacerse | pensar (to think about) |
| consistir | quedar (to agree) |
| insistir | tardar |
| ocuparse | tener gusto |

11 SER AND ESTAR

(a) Uses of ser

- (i) **To denote identity of people or things.**
e.g. Soy médico ; Es española ; Es un hotel grande
- (ii) **With an adjective to denote permanent characteristics**
e.g. Es alto ; Son pequeños ; Soy inteligente
- (iii) **To denote origin**
e.g. Soy de Barcelona ; Son de Sevilla
- (iv) **In certain question forms**
e.g. ¿Cuánto es? ; ¿Cómo es? (what's it like?)
¿Qué es? ; ¿Cuáles son?
- (v) **With 'seguro' to describe inanimate things**
e.g. Su triunfo es seguro. *Their triumph is certain.*
- (vi) **With a past participle to form the passive**
e.g. El señor Navarro es detenido. *Sr. Navarro is arrested.*
El coche fue aparcado por Juan. *The car was parked by Juan.*

(b) Uses of estar

- (i) **To denote position**
e.g. Estamos en España ; Estarán en el zoo ; ¿Dónde estabas?
- (ii) **To denote health**
e.g. ¿Cómo estás? ; Estoy muy bien
- (iii) **With an adjective to denote temporary states**
e.g. Estoy cansado ; No están contentos ; El teatro estaba lleno
- (iv) **With the gerund to form continuous tenses**
e.g. Estoy esperando a mi padre ; Estaban comiendo en el restaurante
- (v) **With a past participle to denote a state resulting from an action**
e.g. Está sentado en la butaca. *He's sitting in the armchair.*
El coche estaba aparcado en la calle. *The car was parked in the street.*
El Liceo está cerrado. *The Liceo is closed.*
Estaré levantada. *I'll be up.*

- (vi) **'seguro' to express a feeling of certainty**
Estoy seguro de que ganará. *I'm sure he'll win.*

12 THE ARTICLES

(a) Definite Article

	Masculine	Feminine
Singular	el médico	la maleta
Plural	los médicos	las maletas

- (i) *The masculine singular form el is used with feminine nouns that begin with a or ha and bear the stress of the word.*
e.g. el ama de casa; el agua (*but las amas de casa; las aguas.*)
- (ii) *The definite article is normally used with parts of the body and clothing instead of the possessive adjective.*
e.g. Me duele la cabeza; Voy a ponerme el abrigo;
Tiene los ojos azules.
- (iii) *In certain fixed expressions contrary to English usage.*
e.g. Voy al colegio; Van a la iglesia.
- (iv) *El combines with a to form al and with de to form del.*
e.g. Llegaron al aeropuerto; el precio del coche
- (v) *The definite article is omitted with nouns in apposition.*
e.g. Estamos en Madrid, capital de España.
- (vi) *The definite article is used with nouns used in a general sense.*
e.g. Me gusta la cerveza; Tengo interés por la pintura;
El tiempo es oro.
- (vii) *Names of people and places described by an adjective are used with the definite article.*
e.g. el Madrid viejo; la pobre Teresa.

(b) Indefinite Article

	Masculine	Feminine
Singular	un médico	una maleta
Plural	unos médicos	unas maletas

- (i) *The plural forms unos and unas may be translated as "some".*
- (ii) *The masculine singular form un is used with feminine nouns beginning with a stressed a or ha.*
e.g. un ama de casa; Tengo un hambre canina.